CP/M Plusтм (CP/M Version 3.0) Operating System

System Guide

COPYRIGHT

Copyright (C) 1983 Digital Research Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Digital Research Inc., 60 Garden Court, Box DRI, Monterey, California 93942.

DISCLAIMER

DIGITAL RESEARCH INC. MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE CONTENTS HEREOF AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE. Further, Digital Research Inc. reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the content hereof without obligation of Digital Research Inc. to notify any person of such revision or changes.

NOTICE TO USER

From time to time changes are made in the filenames and in the files actually included on the distribution disk. This manual should not be construed as a representation or warranty that such files or facilities exist on the distribution disk or as part of the materials and programs distributed. Most distribution disks include a "README.DOC" file. This file explains variations from the manual which do constitute modification of the manual and the items included therewith. Be sure to read this file before using the software.

TRADEMARKS

CP/M and Digital Research and its logo are registered trademarks of Digital Research Inc. CP/M Plus, DDT, LINK-80, RMAC, SID, TEX, and XREF are trademarks of Digital Research Inc. Altos is a registered trademark of Altos Corporation. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines. Intel is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation. Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Zilog and Z80 are registered trademarks of Zilog Inc.

The CP/M Plus (CP/M Version 3) Operating System System Guide was prepared using the Digital Research TEX" Text Formatter and printed in the United States of America.

Foreworci

CP/M(R) 3, also marketed as CP/M Plus(R), is a single-console operating system for 8-bit machines that use an Intel_(R) 8080, 8085, or Zilog(R) Z80(R) CPU. CP/M 3 is upward-compatible with its predecessor, CP/M 2, and offers more features and higher performance than CP/M 2. This manual describes the steps necessary to create or modify a CP/M 3 Basic Input Output System (BIOS) tailored for a specific hardware environment.

The CP/M Plus (CP/M Version 3) Operating System System Guide (hereafter cited as CP/M Plus System Guide) assumes you are familiar with systems programming in 8080 assembly language and that you have access to a CP/M 2 system. It also assumes you understand the target hardware and that you have functioning disk I/O drivers. You should be familiar with the accompanying CP/M Plus (CP/M Version 3) Operating System User's Guide (hereafter cited as CP/M Plus User's Guide) describing the operating system utilities. You should also be familiar with the CP/M Plus (CP/M Version 3) Operating system Programmer's Guide (hereafter cited as CP/M Plus Programmer's Guide), which describes the system calls use by the applications programmer to interface with the operating system. The Programmer's Utilities Guide for the CP/M Family of Operating Systems (hereafter cited as Programmer's Utilities Guide) documents the assembling and debugging utilities.

Section 1 of this manual is an overview of the component modules of the CP/M 3 operating system. Section 2 provides an overview of the functions and data structures necessary to write an interface module between CP/M 3 and specific hardware. Section 3 contains a detailed description of these functions and data structures, followed by instructions to assemble and link the distributed modules with your customized modules. Section 4 describes the modular organization of the sample CP/M 3 BIOS on your distribution diskette. Section 5 documents the procedure to generate and boot your CP/M 3 system. Section 6 is a sample debugging session.

The appendixes contain tables, and sample BIOS modules you can use, or study and modify. Appendix A discusses removable media drives. Appendix B discusses automatic density support. Appendix C describes how CP/M 3 differs from CP/M 2. Appendix D shows the format of the CPM3.SYS file.

Appendixes E through H are listings of the assembled source code for the four hardware-independent modules of the sample BIOS. Appendix E is the kernel module to use when creating a modular BIOS in the form of the distributed sample. Appendix F shows the System Control Block. Appendix G is a table of equates for the baud rate and mode byte for character I/O. Appendix H contains the macro definitions you can use to generate some of the CP/M 3 disk data structures. Appendix I lists the assembled source code for the six BIOS modules that depend on the Altos@ 8000-15 Computer System hardware. It also contains a sample Submit file to build a BIOS.

Appendixes J and K are tabular summaries of the public entry points and data items in the modules of the sample BIOS. Finally, Appendix L is a tabular summary of the thirty-three functions of the CP/M 3 BIOS, complete with entry parameters and returned values.

Table of Contents

1 CP/M 3 Opera	ting System Overview	
1.1 Introductio	on to CP/M 3	1
1.2 CP/M 3 Sy	stem Components	2
1.3 Communic	ation Between Modules	2
1.4 Banked and	d Nonbanked Systems	4
1.5 Memory R	equirements	7
1.6 Disk Organ	nization	10
1.7 Hardware S	Supported	10
1.7.1 Hardw	are Supported by CP/M 3 Banked System.	11
1.7.2 Hardw	are Supported by CP/M 3 Nonbanked System	11
1.8 Customizin	ng CP/M 3	11
1.9 Initial Load	d (Cold Boot) of CP/M 3	12
2 CP/M 3 BIOS	Overview	
2.1 Organizatio	on of the BIOS	15
2.2 System Co	ntrol Block	17
2.3 System Init	tialization	18
2.4 Character I	[/O	19
2.5 Disk I/O		20
2.6 Memory Se	elects and Moves	24
2.7 Clock Supp	port	24
3 CP/M 3 BIOS	Functional Specifications	
3.1 System Co	ntrol Block	27
3.2 Character I	I/O Data Structures 32	
3.3 BIOS Disk	Data Structures 34	
3.3.1 Drive	Table 36	
3.3.2 Disk P	arameter Header 36	

Table of Contents

(continued)

3.3.3 Disk Parameter Block		
3.3.4 Buffer Control Block	44	
3.3.5 Data Structure macro Definitions	46	
3.4 BIOS Subroutine Entry Points	49	
3.4.1 System Initialization Functions	51	
3.4.2 Character I/O Functions	54	
3.4.3 Disk I/O Functions	58	
3.4.4 Memory Select and Move Functions	64	
3.4.5 Clock Support Function	67	
3.5 Banking Considerations	67	
3.6 Assembling and Linking Your BIOS		

4 CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules

4.1	Functional Summary of BIOS Modules		71
4.2	Conventions Used in BIOS Modules		73
4.3	Interactions of Modules		73
	4.3.1 Initial Boot		73
	4.3.2 Character I/O Operation		74
	4.3.3 Disk I/O Operation		74
4.4	Predefined Variables and Subroutines	75	
4.5	BOOT Module		77
4.6	Character I/O		78
4.7	Disk I/O		81
	4.7.1 Disk I/O Structure		81
	4.7.2 Drive Table Module (DRVTBL)		81

Table of Contents (continued)

4.7.3 Extended Disk Parameter Headers	(XDPHS)	82
4.7.4 Subroutine Entry Points		83
4.7.5 Error Handling and Recovery		84
4.7.6 Multiple Sector I/O		85
4.8 MOVE Module		85
4.9 Linking Modules into the BIOS		86
5 System Generation		
5.1 GENCPM Utility		87
5.2 Customizing the CPMLDR		98
5.3 CPMLDR Utility		100
5.4 Booting CP/M 3		101
6 Debugging the BIOS		103

Appendixes

A Removable Media Considerations	107	
B Auto-density Support	109	
C Modifying a CP/M 2 BIOS	111	
D CPM3.SYS File Format	115	
E Root Module of Relocatable BIOS for CP/M 3	117	
F Systein Control Blo,, k Definition for CP/M 3 BIOS	129	
G Equates for Mode Byte Fields: MODEBAUD LIB 131		
H Macro Definitions for CP/M 3 BIOS Data Structures: CPM3 L	133	
I ACS 8000-15 BIOS Modules		
I.1 Boot Loader Module for CP/M 3	137	
I.2 Character I/O Handler for Z80 Chip-based System	140	
I.3 Drive Table	144	
I.4 Z80 DMA Single-density Disk Handler 144		
1.5 Bank and Move Module for CP/M Linked BIOS	152	
I.6 I/O Port Addresses for Z80 Chip-based System 1		
I.7 Sample Submit File for ASC 8000-15 System	155	
J Public Entry Points for CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules		
K Public Data Items in CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules		
L CP/M 3 BIOS Function Summary		

Tables, Figures, and Listings

Tables

1-1.	CP/M 3 Operating System Memory Requirements	7
2-1.	CP/M 3 BIOS Jump Vector	16
2-2.	CP/M 3 BIOS Functions	17
2-3.	Initialization of Page Zero	18
2-4.	CP/M 3 Logical Device Characteristics	19
2-5.	BDOS Calls to BIOS in Nonbanked/Banked Systems.	21
2-6.	Multiple Sector I/O in Nonbanked/Banked Systems.	22
2-7.	Reading Two Contiguous Sectors in Banked System.	23
3-1.	System Control Block Fields	29
3-2.	Disk Parameter Header Fields	37
3-3.	Disk Parameter Block Fields	40
3-4.	BSH and BLM Values	42
3-5.	Maximum EXM Values	42
3-6.	BLS and Number of Dir;cto;y Entries	43
3-7.	PSH and PHM Values	44
3-8.	Buffer Control Block Fields	45
3-9.	Functional Organization of BIOS Entry Points	49
3-10.	CP/M 3 BIOS Function Jump Table Summary	50
3-11.	I/O Redirection Bit Vectors in SCB	54
4-1.	CP/M 3 BIOS Module Function Summary	72
4-2.	Public Symbols in CP/M 3 BIOS	75
4-3.	Global Variables in BIOSKRNL ASM	76
4-4.	Public Utility Subroutines in BIOSKRNL ASM	76
4-5.	Public Names in the BIOS Jump Vector	77
4-6.	BOOT Module Entry Points	78
4-7.	Mode Bits	79
4-8.	Baud Rates for serialDevices	79
4-9.	Character Device Labels	80
4-10.	Fields of Each XDPH	83
4-11.	Subroutine Entry Poin	84
4-12.	Move Module Entry Points	86
5-1.	Sample CP/M 3 System Track Organization	99
C-1.	CP/M 3 BIOS Functions	111
D-1.	CPM3.SYS File Format	115
D-2.	Header Record Definition	115
K-1.	Public Data Items	159
L-1.	BIOS Function Jump Table Summary	161

Tables, Figures, and Listings

(continued)

Figures

1.1.	General Memory Organization of CP/M 3		4
1-2.	Memory Organization for Banked CP/M 3 System	5	
1-3.	memory Organization with Bank 1 Enabled		6
1-4.	Memory organization in Nonbanked CP/M 3 System		7
1-5.	Memory Organization in Banked CP/M 3		8
1-6.	Memory Organization in Nonbanked CP/M 3		9
1-7.	CP/M 3 System Disk Organization		10
2-1.	CP/M 3 System Tracks		19
3.1	Disk Data Structures in a Banked System		35
3.2	Disk Parameter Header Format		36
3-3.	Disk Parameter Block Format		40
3-4.	ALO and ALl		43
3-5.	Buffer Control Block Format		44
4-1.	XDPH Format		82

Listings

SCB ASM File	28
Sample Character Device Table	33
Equates for Mode Byte Bit Fields	34
Root Module of Relocatable BIOS for CP/M 3	117
System Control Block Definition for CP/M 3 BIOS.	129
Equates for Mode Byte Fields: MODEBAUD LIB	131
Macro Definitions	133
Boot Loader Module for CP/M 3	137
Character I/O Handler for Z80 Chip-based System.	140
Drive Table	144
Z80 DMA Single-density Disk Handler	144
Bank and Move Module for CP/M 3 Linked BIOS	152
I/O Port Addresses for Z80 Chip-based System	153
Sample Submit File for ACS 8000-15 System	155
Public Entry Points	157
	Sample Character Device Table Equates for Mode Byte Bit Fields Root Module of Relocatable BIOS for CP/M 3 System Control Block Definition for CP/M 3 BIOS. Equates for Mode Byte Fields: MODEBAUD.LIB Macro Definitions Boot Loader Module for CP/M 3 Character I/O Handler for Z80 Chip-based System. Drive Table Z80 DMA Single-density Disk Handler Bank and Move Module for CP/M 3 Linked BIOS I/O Port Addresses for Z80 Chip-based System Sample Submit File for ACS 8000-15 System

S ection 1

CP/M 3 Operating System Overview

This section is an overview of the CP/M 3 operating system, with a description of the system components and how they relate to each other. The section includes a discussion of memory configurations and supported hardware. The last portion summarizes the creation of a customized version of the CP/M 3 Basic Input Output System (BIOS).

1.1 Introduction to CP/M 3

CP/M 3 provides an environment for program development and execution on computer systems that use the Intel 8080, 8085, -or ZBO microprocessor chip. CP/M 3 provides rapid access to data and programs through a file structure that supports dynamic allocation of space for sequential and random access files.

CP/M 3 supports a maximum of sixteen logical floppy or hard disks with a storage capacity of up to 512 megabytes each. The maximum file size supported is 32 megabytes. You can configure the number of directory entries and block size to satisfy various user needs.

CP/M 3 is supplied in two versions. One version supports nonbank-switched memory; the second version supports hardware with bank-switched memory capabilities. CP/M 3 supplies additional facilities for the bank-switched system, including extended command line editing, password protection of files, and extended error messages.

The nonbanked system requires 8.5 kilobytes of memory, plus space for your customized BIOS. It can execute in a minimum of 32 kilobytes of memory.

The bank-switched system requires a minimum of two memory banks with 11 kilobytes of memory in Bank 0 and 1.5 kilobytes in common memory, plus space for your customized BIOS. The bank-switched system provides more user memory for application programs.

CP/M 3 resides in the file CPM3.SYS, which is loaded into memory by a system loader during system initialization. The system loader resides on the first two tracks of the system disk. CPM3.SYS contains the distributed BDOS and the customized BIOS.

The CP/M 3 operating system is distributed on two single- density, single-sided, eight-inch floppy disks. Digital Research supplies a sample BIOS that is configured for an Altos 8000-15 microcomputer system with bank-switched memory and two single- density, single-sided, eight-inch floppy disk drives.

1.2 CP/M 3 System Components

The CP/M 3 operating system consists of the following three modules: the Console Command Processor (CCP), the Basic Disk Operating System (BDOS), and the Basic Input Output System (BIOS).

The CCP is a program that provides the basic user interface to the facilities of the operating system. The CCP supplies six built- in commands: DTR, DIRS, ERASE, RENAME, TYPE, and USER. The CCP executes in the Transient Program Area (TPA), the region of memory where all application programs execute. The CCP contains the Program Loader Module, which loads transient (applications) programs from disk into the TPA for execution.

The BDOS is the logical nucleus and file system of CP/M 3. The BDOS provides the interface between the application program and the physical input/output routines of the BIOS.

The BIOS is a hardware-dependent module that interfaces the BDOS to a particular hardware environment. The BIOS performs all physical I/O in the system. The BIOS consists of a number of routines that you must configure to support the specific hardware of the target computer system.

The BDOS and the BIOS modules cooperate to provide the CCP and other transient programs with hardware-independent access to CP/M 3 facilities. Because the BIOS is configured for different hardware environments and the BDOS remains constant, you can transfer programs that run under CP/M 3 unchanged to systems with different hardware configurations.

1.3 Communication Between Modules

The BIOS loads the CCP into the TPA at system cold and warm start. The CCP moves the Program Loader Module to the top of the TPA and uses the Program Loader Module to load transient programs.

The BDOS contains a set of functions that the CCP and applications programs call to perform disk and character input and output operations.

The BIOS contains a Jump Table with a set of 33 entry points that the BDOS calls to perform hardware-dependent primitive functions, such as peripheral device I/O. For example, CONIN is an entry point of the BIOS called by the BDOS to read the next console input character.

1.3 Communication Between Modules

Similarities exist between the BDOS functions and the BIOS functions, particularly for simple device I/O. For example, when a transient program makes a console output function call to the BDOS, the BDOS makes a console output call to the BIOS. In the case of disk I/O, however, this relationship is more complex. The BDOS might make many BIOS function calls to perform a single BDOS file I/O function. BDOS disk I/O is in terms of 128-byte logical records. BIOS disk I/O is in terms of physical sectors and tracks.

The System Control Block (SCB) is a 100-byte, decimal, CP/M 3 data structure that resides in the BDOS system component. The BDOS and the BIOS communicate through fields in the SCB. The SCB contains BDOS flags and data, CCP flags and data, and other system information, such as console characteristics and the current date and time. You can access some of the System Control Block fields from the BIOS.

Note that the SCB contains critical system parameters which reflect the current state of the operating system. If a program modif i es these parameters, the operating system can crash. See Section 3 of this manual, and the description of BDOS Function 49 in the CP/M Plus Programmer's Guide for more information on the System Control Block.

Page Zero is a region of memory that acts as an interface between transient programs and the operating system. Page Zero contains critical system parameters, including the entry to the BDOS and the entry to the BIOS Warm BOOT routine. At system start-up, the BIOS initializes these two entry points in Page Zero. All linkage between transient programs and the BDOS is restricted to the indirect linkage through Page Zero. Figure 1-1 illustrates the general memory organization of CP/M 3.

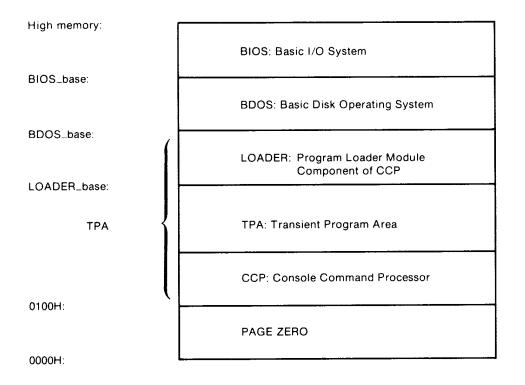


Figure 1-1. General Memory Organization of CP/M 3

Note that all memory regions in CP/M 3 are page aligned, which means that they must begin on a page boundary. Because a page is defined as 256 (100H) bytes, a page boundary always begins at a hexadecimal address where the low-order byte of the hex address is zero.

1.4 Banked and Nonbanked Systems

CP/M 3 is supplied in two versions: one for hardware that supports banked memory, and the other for hardware with a minimum of 32 kilobytes of memory. The systems are called banked and nonbanked.

Digital Research supplies System Page Relocatable (. SPR) files for both a banked BDOS and a nonbanked BDOS. A sample banked BIOS is supplied for you to use as an example when creating a customized BIOS for your set of hardware components.

The following figure shows the memory organization for a banked system. Bank 0 and common memory are for the operating system. Bank 1 is the Transient Program Area, which contains the Page Zero region of memory. You can use additional banks to enhance operating system performance.

In banked CP/M 3 systems, CPMLDR, the system loader, loads part of the BDOS into common memory and part of the BDOS into Bank 0. CPMLDR loads the BIOS in the same manner.

Figure 1-2 shows the memory organization for the banked version of CP/M 3.

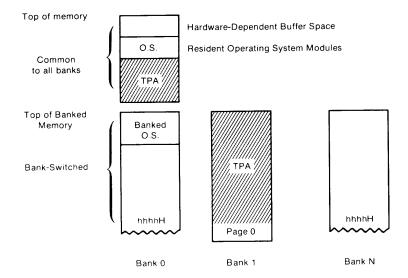


Figure 1-2. Memory organization for Banked CP/M 3 System

In this figure, the top region of memory is called common memory. Common memory is always enabled and addressable. The operating system is divided into two modules: the resident portion, which resides in common memory, and the banked portion, which resides just below common memory in Bank 0.

The shaded areas in Figure 1-2 represent the memory available to transient programs. The clear areas are used by the operating system for disk record buffers and directory hash tables. The clear area in the common region above the operating system represents space that can be allocated for data buffers by GENCPM, the CP/M 3 system generation utility. The size of the buffer area is determined by the specific hardware requirements of the host microcomputer system.

Bank 0, the system bank, is the bank that is enabled when CP/M 3 is cold started. Bank 1 is the transient program bank.

The transient program bank must be contiguous from location zero to the top of banked memory. Common memory must also be contiguous. The other banks need not begin at location zero or have contiguous memory.

Figure 1-3 shows the CP/M 3 memory organization when the TPA bank, Bank 1, is enabled in a bank-switched system.

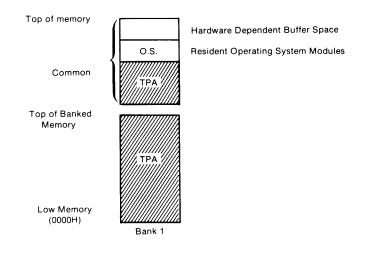


Figure 1-3. Memory Organization with Bank I Enabled in Banked System

The operating system switches to Bank 0 or other banks when performing operating system functions. In general, any bank switching performed by the operating system is transparent to the calling program.

The memory organization for the nonbanked version of CP/M 3 is much simpler, as shown in Figure 1-4:

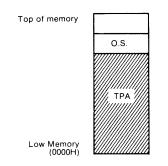


Figure 1-4. Memory Organization in Nonbanked CP/M 3 System

In the nonbanked version of CP/M 3, memory consists of a single contiguous region addressable from OOOOH up to a maximum of OFFFFH, or 64K-1. The clear area above the operating system represents space that can be allocated for data buffers and directory hash tables by the CP/M 3 system generation utility, GENCPM, or directly allocated by the BIOS. The minimum size of the buffer area is determined by the specific hardware requirements of the host microcomputer system. Again, the shaded region represents the space available for transient programs.

1.5 Memory Requirements

Table 1-1 shows typical sizes of the CP/M 3 operating system components.

Table 1-1. CP/M 3 Operating System Memory Requirements

CP/M 3 Version	Nonbanked	Banked		
		Common	Bank 0	
BDOS	8.5K	1.5K	11K	
BIOS (values vary)				
floppy system	1.5K	.75K	2K	
hard system	2.5K	1.5K	3K	

The CP/M 3 banked system requires a minimum of two banks (Bank 0 and Bank 1) and can support up to 16 banks of memory. The size of the common region is often 16K, but can be as small as 4K. Common memory must be large enough to contain the required buffers and the resident (common) portion of the operating system, which means a 1.5K BDOS and the common part of your customized BIOS.

In a banked environment, CP/M 3 maintains a cache of deblocking buffers and directory records using a Least Recently Used (LRU) buffering scheme. The LRU buffer is the first to be reused when the system runs out of buffer space. The BDOS maintains separate buffer pools for directory and data record caching.

The RSX modules shown in Figure 1-5 are Resident System Extensions (RSX) that are loaded directly below the operating system when included in an application or utility program. The Program Loader places the RSX in memory and chains BDOS calls through the RSX entry point in the RSX.

Figure 1-5 shows the memory organization in a typical bank- switched CP/M 3 system.

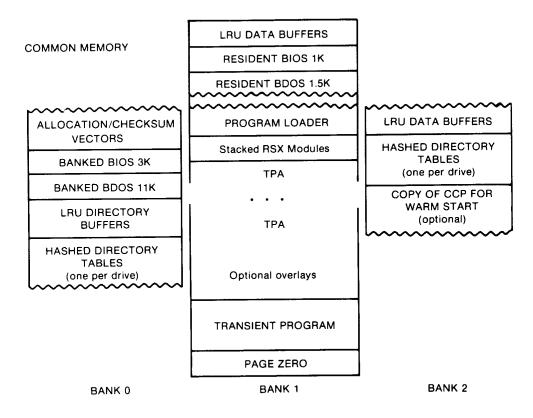


Figure 1-5. Memory Organization in Banked CP/M 3

1.5 Memory Requirements

The banked system supports a TPA of 60K or more. The banked portion of the operating system in Bank 0 requires at least 16K of memory.

In the banked system, the BDOS and the BIOS are separated into two parts: a resident portion, and a banked portion. The resident BDOS and BIOS are located in common memory. The banked BDOS and BIOS are located in the operating system bank, referred to as Bank 0 in this manual.

The TPA extends from 100H in Bank 1 up to the bottom of the resident BDOS in common memory. The banked BIOS and BDOS reside in Bank 0 with the directory buffers. Typically, all data buffers reside in common. Data buffers can reside in an alternate bank if the system has a DMA controller capable of transferring arbitrary blocks of data from one bank to another. Hashed directory tables (one per drive) can be placed in any bank except Bank 1 (TPA). Hashed directory tables require 4 bytes per directory entry.

Figure 1-6 shows a typical nonbanked system configuration.

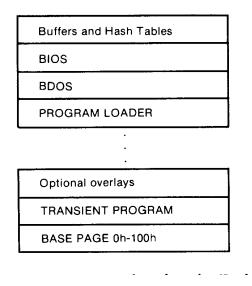


Figure 1-6. Memory organization in Nonbanked CP/M 3

The nonbanked CP/M 3 system requires 8.5K of memory plus space for the BIOS, buffers, and hash tables, allowing a TPA size of up to 52K to 54K, depending on the size of the BIOS and the number of hash tables and buffers you are using.

1.6 Disk Organization

Figure 1-7 illustrates the organization of a CP/M 3 system disk.

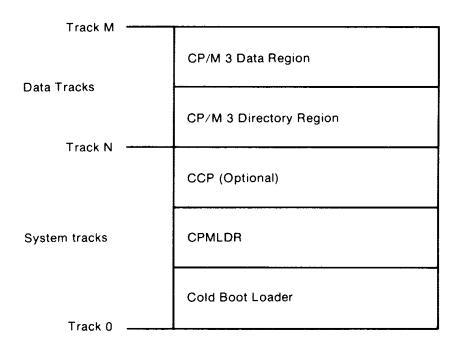


Figure 1-7. CP/M 3 System Disk Organization

In Figure 1-7, the first N tracks are the system tracks; the remaining tracks, the data tracks, are used by CP/M 3 for file storage. Note that the system tracks are used by CP/M 3 only during system cold start and warm start. All other CP/M 3 disk access is directed to the data tracks of the disk. To maintain compatibility with Digital Research products, you should use an eight-inch, single-density, IBM' 3740 formatted disk with two system tracks.

1.7 Hardware Supported

You can customize the BIOS to match any hardware environment with the following general characteristics.

1.7.1 Hardware Supported by CP/M 3 Banked System

o Intel 8080, Intel 8085, or zilog Z80 CPU or equivalent.

- o A minimum of two and up to sixteen banks of memory with the top 4K-32K in common memory. Bank 1 must have contiguous memory from address 0000H to the base of common memory. A reasonable configuration consists of two banks of 48K RAM each, with the top 16K in common memory.
- o one to sixteen disk drives of up to 512 megabytes capacity each.
- o Some form of ASCII console device, usually a CRT.
- o One to twelve additional character input and or output devices, such as printers, communications hardware, and plotters.

1.7.2 Hardware Supported by CP/M 3 Nonbanked System

- o Intel 8080, Intel 8085, or Zilog Z80 CPU or equivalent.
- o A minimum of 32K and up to 64K contiguous memory addressable from location zero.
- o One to sixteen disk drives of up to 512 megabytes capacity each.
- o Some form of ASCII console device, usually a CRT.
- o One to twelve additional input and or output devices, usually including a printer.

Because most CP/M-compatible software is distributed on eight- inch, soft-sectored, single-density floppy disks, it is recommended that a CP/M 3 hardware configuration include a minimum of two disk drives, at least one of which is a single-density floppy disk drive.

1.8 Customizing CP/M 3

Digital Research supplies the BDOS files for a banked and a nonbanked version of CP/M 3. A system generation utility, GENCPM, is provided with CP/M 3 to create a version of the operating system tailored to your hardware. GENCPM combines the BDOS and your customized BIOS files to create a CPM3.SYS file, which is loaded into memory at system start-up. The CPM3.SYS file contains the BDOS and BIOS system components and information indicating where these modules reside in memory.

Digital Research supplies a CP/M 3 loader file, CPMLDR, which you can link with your customized loader BIOS and use to load the CPM3.SYS file into memory. CPMLDR is a small, self-contained version of CP/M 3 that supports only console output and sequential file input. Consistent with CP/M 3 organization, it contains two modules: an invariant CPMLDR BDOS, and a variant CPMLDR-BIOS, which is adapted to match the host microcomputer hardware environment. The CPMLDR BIOS module can perform cold start initialization of I/O ports and similar functions. CPMLDR can display a memory map of the CP/M 3 system at start-up. This is a GENCPM option.

The following steps tell you how to create a new version of CP/M 3 tailored to your specific hardware.

- 1) Write and assemble a customized BIOS following the specifications described in Section 3. This software module must correspond to the exact physical characteristics of the target system, including memory and port addresses, peripheral types, and drive characteristics.
- 2) Use the system generation utility, GENCPM, to create the CPM3.SYS file containing the CP/M 3 distributed BDOS and your customized BIOS, as described in Section 5.
- 3) Write a customized loader BIOS (LDRBIOS) to reside on the system tracks as of CPMLDR. CPMLDR loads the CPM3.SYS file into memory from disk. Section 5 gives the instructions for customizing the LDRBIOS and generating CPMLDR. Link your customized LDRBIOS file with the supplied CPMLDR file.
- 4) Use the COPYSYS utility to put CPMLDR on the system tracks of a disk.
- 5) Test and debug your customized version of CP/M 3.

If you have banked memory, Digital Research recommends that you first use your customized BIOS to create a nonbanked version of the CP/M 3 operating system. You can leave your entire BIOS in common memory until you have a working system. Test all your routines in a nonbanked version of CP/M 3 before you create a banked version.

1.9 Initial Load (Cold Boot) of CP/M 3

CP/M 3 is loaded into memory as follows. Execution is initiated by a four-stage procedure. The first stage consists of loading into memory a small program, called the Cold Boot Loader, from the system tracks of the Boot disk. This load operation is typically handled by a hardware feature associated with system reset. The Cold Boot Loader is usually 128 or 256 bytes in length.

1.9 Initial Load (Cold Boot) of CP/M 3

In the second stage, the Cold Boot Loader loads the memory image of the CP/M 3 system loader program, CPMLDR, from the system tracks of a disk into memory and passes control to it. For a banked system, the Cold Boot Loader loads CPMLDR into Bank 0. A PROM loader can perform stages one and two.

In the third stage, CPMLDR reads the CPM3.SYS f ile, which contains the BDOS and customized BIOS, from the the data area of the disk into the memory addresses assigned by GENCPM. In a banked system, CPMLDR reads the common part of the BDOS and BIOS into the common part of memory, and reads the banked part of the BDOS and BIOS into the area of memory below common base in Bank 0. CPMLDR then transfers control to the Cold BOCT system initialization routine in the BIOS.

For the f inal stage, the BIOS Cold BOOT routine, BIOS Function 0, performs any remaining necessary hardware initialization, displays the sign-on message, and reads the CCP from the system tracks or from a CCP.COM file on disk into location IOOH of the TPA. The Cold BOOT routine transfers control to the CCP, which then displays the system prompt.

Section 2 provides an overview of the organization of the System Control Block and the data structures and functions in the CP/M 3 BIOS.

End of Section 1

Section 2

CP/M 3 BIOS Overview

This section describes the organization of the CP/M 3 BIOS and the BDOS jump vector. It provides an overview of the System Control Block, followed by a discussion of system initialization procedures, character I/O, clock support, disk I/O, and memory selects and moves.

2.1 Organization of the BIOS

The BIOS is the CP/M 3 module that contains all hardware- dependent input and output routines. To configure CP/M 3 for a particular hardware environment, use the sample BIOS supplied with this document and adapt it to the specific hardware of the target system.

Alternatively, you can modify an existing CP/M 2.2 BIOS to install CP/M 3 on your target machine. Note that an unmodified CP/M 2.2 BIOS does not work with the CP/M 3 operating system. See Appendix C for a description of the modifications necessary to convert a CP/M 2.2 BIOS to a CP/M 3 BIOS.

The BIOS is a set of routines that performs system initialization, character-oriented I/O to the console and printer devices, and physical sector I/O to the disk devices. The BIOS also contains routines that manage block moves and memory selects for systems with bank-switched memory. The BIOS supplies tables that define the layout of the disk devices and allocate buffer space which the BDOS uses to perform record blocking and deblocking. The BIOS can maintain the system time and date in the System Control Block.

Table 2-1 describes the entry points into the BIOS from the Cold Start Loader and the BDOS. Entry to the BIOS is through a jump vector. The jump vector is a set of 33 jump instructions that pass program control to the individual BIOS subroutines.

You must include all of the entry points in the BIOS jump vector in your BIOS. However, if your system does not support some of the functions provided for in the BIOS, you can use empty subroutines for those functions. For example, if your system does not support a printer, JMP LIST can reference a subroutine consisting of only a RET instruction. Table 2-1 shows the elements of the jump vector.

Table 2-1. CP/M 3 BIOS Jump Vector

No.	Instruction	Description
0	JMP BOOT	Perform cold start initialization
1	JMP WBOOT	Perform warm start initialization
2	JMP CONST	Check for console input character ready
3	JMP CONIN	Read Console Character in
4	JMP CONOUT	Write Console Character out
5	JMP LIST	Write List Character out
6	JMP AUXOUT	Write Auxiliary Output Character
7	JMP AUXIN	Read Auxiliary Input Character
8	JMP HOME	Move to Track 00 on Selected Disk
9	JMP SELDSK	Select Disk Drive
10	JMP SETTRK	Set Track Number
11	JMP SETSEC	Set Sector Number
12	JMP SETDMA	Set DMA Address
13	JMP READ	Read Specified Sector
14	JMP WRITE	Write Specified Sector
15	JMP LISTST	Return List Status
16	JMP SECTRN	Translate Logical to Physical Sector
17	JMP CONOST	Return Output Status of Console
18	JMP AUXIST	Return Input Status of Aux. Port
19	JMP AUXOST	Return Output Status of Aux. Port
20	JMP DEVTBL	Return Address of Char. I/O Table
21	JMP DEVINI	Initialize Char. I/O Devices
22	JMP DRVTBL	Return Address of Disk Drive Table
23	JMP MULTIO	Set Number of Logically Consecutive
		sectors to be read or written
24	JMP FLUSH	Force Physical Buffer Flushing for
		user-supported deblocking
25	JMP MOVE	Memory to Memory Move
26	JMP TIME	Time Set/Get signal
27	JMP SELMEM	Select Bank of memory
28	JMP SETBNK	Specify Bank for DMA Operation
29	JMP XMOVE	Set Bank When a Buffer is in a Bank
		other than 0 or 1
30	JMP USERF	Reserved for System Implementor
31	JMP RESERV1	Reserved for Future Use
32	JMP RESERV2	Reserved for Future Use

Each jump address in Table 2-1 corresponds to a particular subroutine that performs a specific system operation. Note that two entry points are reserved for future versions of CP/M, and one entry point is provided for OEM subroutines, accessed only by direct BIOS calls using BDOS Function 50. Table 2-2 shows the five categories of system operations and the function calls that accomplish these operations.

Table 2-2. CP/M 3 BIOS Functions

Operation Function

System Initialization

BOOT, WBOOT, DEVTBL, DEVINI, DRVTBL

Character I/O

CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, LIST, AUXOUT, AUXIN, LISTST, CONOST, AUXIST, AUXOST

Disk I/O

HOME, SELDSK, SETTRK, SETSEC, SETDMA, READ, WRITE, SECTRN, MULTIO, FLUSH

Memory Selects and Moves MOVE, SELMEM, SETBNK, XMOVE

Clock Support TIME

You do not need to implement every function in the BIOS jump vector. However, to operate, the BDOS needs the BOOT, WBOOT, CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, HOME, SELDSK, SETTRK, SETSEC, SETDMA, READ, WRITE, SECTRN, MULTIO, and FLUSH subroutines. Implement SELMEM and SETBNK only in a banked environment. You can implement MULTIO, FLUSH, and TIME as returns with a zero in register A. DEVICE and some other utilities use the remaining entry points, but it is not necessary to fully implement them in order to debug and develop the system.

Note: include all routines but make the nonimplemented routines a RET instruction.

2.2 System Control Block

The System Control Block (SCB) is a data structure located in the BDOS. The SCB is a communications area referenced by the BDOS, the CCP, the BIOS, and other system components. The SCB contains system parameters and variables, some of which the BIOS can reference. The fields of the SCB are named, and definitions of these names are supplied as public variable and subroutine names in the SCB.ASM file contained on the distribution disk. See Section 3.1 for a discussion of the System Control Block.

2.3 System Initialization

When the BOOT and WBOOT routines of the BIOS get control, they must initialize two system parameters in Page Zero of memory, as shown in Table 2-3.

Table 2-3. Initialization of Page Zero

Location	Description
0,1,2	Set to JMP WBOOT (0000H: JMP BIOS+3). Location 1 and 2 must contain the address of WBOOT in the jump vector.
5,6,7	Set to JMP BDOS, the primary entry point to CP/M 3 for transient programs. The current address of the BDOS is maintained in the variable @MXTPA in the System Control Block. (See Section 3.1, "System Control Block," and BIOS Function 1: WBOOT on page 52.)

The BOOT and WBOOT routine must load the CCP into the TPA in Bank I at location 0100H. The CCP can be loaded in two ways. If there is sufficient space on the system tracks, the CCP can be stored on the system tracks and loaded from there. If you prefer, or if there is not sufficient space on the system tracks, the BIOS Cold BOOT routine can read the CCP into memory from the file CCP.COM on disk.

If the CCP is in a COM file, use the BOOT and WBOOT routines to perform any necessary system initialization, then use the BDOS functions to OPEN and READ the CCP.COM file into the TPA. In bank- switched systems, the CCP must be read into the TPA in Bank 1.

In bank-switched systems, your Cold BOOT routine can place a copy of the CCP into a reserved area of an alternate bank after loading the CCP into the TPA in Bank 1. Then the Warm BOOT routine can copy the CCP into the TPA in Bank 1 from the alternate bank, rather than reloading the CCP from disk, thus avoiding all disk accesses during warm starts.

There is a 128-byte buffer in the resident portion of the BDOS in a banked system that can be used by BOOT and WBOOT. The address of this buffer is stored in the SCB variable @BNKBF. BOOT and WBOOT can use this buffer when copying the CCP to and from the alternate bank.

The system tracks for CP/M 3 are usually partitioned as shown in the following figure;

Cold Start L	dr	CPMLDR	1 	CCP (optional)
			•	

Figure 2-1. CP/M 3 System Tracks

The cold start procedure is designed so you need to initialize the system tracks only once. This is possible because the system tracks contain the system loader and need not change when you change the CP/M 3 operating system. The Cold Start Loader loads CPMLDR into a constant memory location that is chosen when the system is configured. However, CPMLDR loads the BDOS and BIOS system components into memory as specified in the CPM3.SYS file generated by GENCPM, the system generation utility. Thus, CP/M 3 allows the user to configure a new system with GENCPM and then run it without having to update the system tracks of the system disk.

2.4 Character I/O

CP/M 3 assumes that all simple character I/O operations are performed in 8-bit ASCII, upper- and lowercase, with no parity. An ASCII CRTL-Z (IAH) denotes an end-of-file condition for an input device.

Table 2-4 lists the characteristics of the logical devices.

Table 2-4. CP/M 3	Logical Device Characteristics	
Device	Characteristics	
	T h e interactive console that communicates with the operator, accessed by CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, and CONOUTST. Typically, the CONSOLE is a device such as a CRT or teletype, interfaced serially, but it can also be a nemory-mapped video display and keyboard. The console at device and an output device.	
LIST	The system printer, if it exists on your system. LIST is usually a hard- copy device such as a printer or teletypewriter.	
AUXOUT	The auxiliary character output device, such as a modem.	
AUXIN	The auxiliary character input device, such as a modem.	

Note that you can define a single peripheral as the LIST, AUXOUT, and AUXIN device simultaneously. If you assign no peripheral device as the LIST, AUXOUT, or AUXIN device, the AUXOUT and LIST routines can just return, and the AUXIN routine can return with a 1AH (CTRL-Z) in register A to indicate an immediate end-of-file.

CP/M 3 supports character device I/O redirection. This means that you can direct a logical device, such as CONIN or AUXOUT, to one or more physical devices. The DEVICE utility allows you to reassign devices and display, and to change the current device configurations, as described in the CP/M Plus User's Guide. The I/O redirection facility is optional. You should not implement it until the rest of your BIOS is fully functional.

2.5 Disk I/O

The BDOS accomplishes disk I/O by making a sequence of calls to the various disk access subroutines in the BIOS. The subroutines set up the disk number to access, the track and sector on a particular disk, and the Direct Memory Access (DMA) address and bank involved in the I/O operation. After these parameters are established, the BDOS calls the READ or WRITE function to perform the actual I/O operation.

Note that the BDOS can make a single call to SELDSK to select a disk drive, follow it with a number of read or write operations to the selected disk, and then select another drive for subsequent operations.

CP/M 3 supports multiple sector read or write operations to optimize rotational latency on block disk transfers. You can implement the multiple sector I/O facility in the BIOS by using the multisector count passed to the MULTIO entry point. The BDOS calls MULTIO to read or write up to 128 sectors. For every sector number 1 to n, the BDOS calls SETDMA then calls READ or WRITE.

Table 2-5 shows the sequence of BIOS calls that the BDOS makes to read or write a physical disk sector in a nonbanked and a banked system. Table 2-6 shows the sequence of calls the BDOS makes to the BIOS to read or write multiple contiguous physical sectors in a nonbanked and banked system.

Table 2-5. BDOS Calls to BIOS in Nonbanked and Banked Systems

Nonbanked BDOS				
Call	Explanation			
SELDSK	Called only when disk is initially selected or reselected.			
SETTRK	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
SETSEC	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
SETDMA	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
READ, WRITE	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
Banked BDOS				
SELDSK	Called only when disk is initially selected or reselected.			
SETTRK	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
SETSEC	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
SETDMA	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
SETBNK	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			
READ, WRITE	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.			

Table 2-6. Multiple Sector I/O in Nonbanked and Banked Systems

Nonbanked BDOS

Call	Explanation
SELDSK	Called only when disk is initially selected or reselected.
MULTIO	Called to inform the BIOS that the next n calls to disk READ or disk WRITE require a transfer of n contiguous physical sectors to contiguous memory.
SETTRK	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
SETSEC	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
SETDMA	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
READ, WRIT	E Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
Banked BDOS	
SELDSK	Called only when disk is initially selected or reselected.
MULTIO	Called to inform the BIOS that the next n calls to disk READ or disk WRITE require a transfer of n contiguous physical sectors to contiguous memory.
SETTRK Called for every read or write of a physical sector.	
SETSEC	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
SETDMA	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
SETBNK	Called for every read or write of a physical sector.
READ, WRIT	E Called for every read or write of a physical sector.

Table 2-7 shows the sequence of BDOS calls to read two contiguous physical sectors in a banked system.

Table 2-7. Reading Two Contiguous Sectors in Banked System

Call	Explanation
SELDSK	Called to initially select disk
MULTIO	With a value of 2
SETTRK	For first sector
SETSEC	For first sector
SETDMA	For first sector
SETBNK	
READ	
SETTRK	For second sector
SETSEC	For second sector
SETDMA	For second sector
SETBNK	
READ	

The CP/M 3 BDOS performs its own blocking and deblocking of logical 128-byte records. Unlike earlier versions of CP/M, the BIOS READ and WRITE routines always transfer physical sectors as specified in the Disk Parameter Block to or from the DMA buffer. The Disk Parameter Header defines one or more physical sector buffers which the BDOS uses for logical record blocking and deblocking.

In a banked environment, CP/M 3 maintains a cache of deblocking buf fers and directory records using a Least Recently Used (LRU) buffering scheme. The LRU buffer is the first to be reused when the system runs out of buffer space. The BDOS maintains separate buffer pools for directory and data record caching.

The BIOS contains the data structures to control the data and directory buffers and the hash tables. You can either assign these buffers and tables yourself in the BIOS, or allow the GENCPM utility to generate them automatically.

Hash tables greatly speed directory searching. The BDOS can use hash tables to determine the location of directory entries and therefore reduce the number of disk accesses required to read a directory entry. The hash table allows the BDOS to directly access the sector of the directory containing the desired directory entry without having to read the directory sequentially. By eliminating a sequential read of the directory records, hashing also increases the percentage of time that the desired directory record is in a buffer, eliminating the need for any physical disk accesses in these cases. Hash tables and directory caches eliminate many of the directory accesses required when accessing large files. However, in a nonbanked system, hash tables increase the size of the operating system.

When the BIOS finds an error condition, the READ and WRITE routines should perform several retries before reporting the error condition to the BDOS. Ten retries are typical. If the BIOS returns an error condition to the BDOS, the BDOS reports the error to the user in the following form:

CP/M Error on d: Disk I/O

The d: represents the drive specification of the relevant drive.

To provide better diagnostic capabilities for the user, it is often desirable to print a more explicit error message from the BIOS READ or WRITE routines before the BIOS returns an error code to the BDOS. The BIOS should interrogate the SCB Error Mode Variable to determine if it is appropriate to print a message on the console.

2.6 Memory Selects and Moves

Four BIOS functions are provided to perform memory management. The functions are MOVE, XMOVE, SELMEM, and SETBNK. The XMOVE, SELMEM, and SETBNK memory management routines are applicable to the BIOS of banked systems.

The BDOS uses the BIOS MOVE routine to perform memory-to-memory block transfers. In a banked system, the BDOS calls XMOVE to specify the source and destination banks to be used by the MOVE routine. If you use memory that is not in the common area for data record buffers, you must implement the XMOVE routine.

The BDOS uses SELMEM when the operating system needs to execute code or access data in other than the currently selected bank.

The BDOS calls the SETBNK routine prior to calling disk READ or disk WRITE functions. The SETBNK routine must save its specified bank as the DMA bank. When the BDOS invokes a disk I/O routine, the I/O routine should save the current bank number and select the DMA bank prior to the disk READ or WRITE. After completion of the disk READ or WRITE, the disk I/O routine must reselect the current bank. Note that when the BDOS calls the disk I/O routines, Bank 0 is in context (selected).

2.7 Clock Support

If the system has a real-time clock or is capable of keeping time, possibly by counting interrupts from a counter/timer chip, then the BIOS can maintain the time of day in the System Control Block and update the time on clock interrupts. BIOS Function 26 is provided for those systems where the clock is unable to generate an interrupt.

The time of day is kept as four fields. @DATE is a binary word containing the number of days since 31 December 1977. The bytes @HOUR, @MIN, and @SEC in the System Control Block contain the hour, minute, and second in Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) format.

End of Section 2

Section 3

CP/M 3 BIOS Functional Specifications

This section contains a detailed description of the CP/M 3 BIOS The section first discusses the BIOS data structures and their relationships, including the System Control Block, the drive table, the Disk Parameter Header, the Disk Parameter Block, the Buffer Control Blocks, and the character I/O table. The overview of the data structures is followed by a summary of the functions in the BIOS jump vector. A detailed description of the entry values and returned values for each jump instruction in the BIOS jump vector follows the summary. The last part of this section discusses the steps to follow when assembling and linking your customized BIOS.

3.1 The System Control Block

The System Control Block (SCB) is a data structure located in the BDOS. The SCB contains flags and data used by the CCP, the BDOS, the BIOS, and other system components. The BIOS can access specific data in the System Control Block through the public variables defined in the SCB.ASM file, which is supplied on the distribution disk.

Declare the variable names you want to reference in the SCB as externals in your BIOS.ASM source file. Then link your BIOS with the SCB.REL module.

In the SCB.ASM file, the high-order byte of the various SCB addresses is defined as 0FEH. The linker marks absolute external equates as page relocatable when generating a System Page Relocatable (SPR) format file. GENCPM recognizes page relocatable addresses of 0FExxH as references to the System Control Block in the BDOS. GENCPM changes these addresses to point to the actual SCB in the BDOS when it is relocating the system.

Do not perform assembly-time arithmetic on any references to the external labels of the SCB. The result of the arithmetic could alter the page value to something other than 0FEH.

Listing 3-1 shows the SCB.ASM file. The listing shows the field names of the System Control Block. A @ before a name indicates that it is a data item. A ? preceding a name indicates that it is the label of an instruction. In the listing, r/w means Read-Write, and r/o means Read-Only. The BIOS can modify a Read- Write variable, but must not modify a Read-Only variable. Table 3-1 describes each item in the System Control Block in detail.

title 'System Control Block Definition for CP/M3 BIOS'

public @civec, @covec, @aivec, @aovec, @lovec, @bnkbf public @crdma, @crdsk, @vinfo, @resel, @fx, @usrcd public @mltio, @ermde, @erdsk, @media, @bflgs public @date, @hour, @min, @sec, ?erjmp, @mxtpa

scb\$base equ	0FE00H	; Base of the SCB
@CIVECequ@COVECequ@AIVECequ@AOVECequ@LOVECequ@BNKBFequ@CRDMAequ@CRDSKequ@CRDSKequ@VINFOequ@RESELequ@FXequ@MLTIOequ@ERDSKequ@ERDSKequ@BFLGSequ@MEDIAequ@MEDIAequ@MENAequ@MEDIAequ@MENAequ@MENAequ@MENAequ@MINequ@MINequ@MINequ	scb\$base+22h scb\$base+24h scb\$base+26h scb\$base+28h scb\$base+2Ah scb\$base+35h scb\$base+35h scb\$base+35h scb\$base+35h scb\$base+41h scb\$base+44h scb\$base+44h scb\$base+48h scb\$base+48h scb\$base+51h scb\$base+54h scb\$base+58h scb\$base+58h scb\$base+58h scb\$base+58h scb\$base+58h	 ; Console Input Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; Console Output Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; Auxiliary Input Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; Auxiliary Output Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; List Output Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; List Output Redirection Vector (word, r/w) ; Address of 128 Byte Buffer for Banked BIOS ; (word, r/o) ; Current DMA Address (word, r/o) ; Current Disk (byte, r/o) ; BDOS Variable "INFO" (word, r/o) ; FCB Flag (byte, r/o) ; BDOS Function for Error Messages (byte, r/o) ; Current User Code (byte, r/o) ; Current Multisector Count (byte,r/w) ; BDOS Error Disk (byte, r/o) ; Set by BIOS to indicate open door (byte,r/w) ; BDOS Message Size Flag (byte,r/o) ; Date in Days Since 1 Jan 78 (word, r/w) ; Hour in BCD (byte, r/w) ; Second in BCD (byte, r/w)
?ERJMP equ @MXTPA equ	scb\$base+5Fh scb\$base+62h end	; BDOS Error Message Jump (3 bytes, r/w) ; Top of User TPA ; (address at 6,7)(word, r/o)

Listing 3-1. SCB.ASM File

The following table describes in detail each of the fields of the System Control Block.

Table 3-1. System Control Block Fields

Field Meaning

@CIVEC, @COVEC, @AIVEC, @AOVEC, @LOVEC (Read-Write Variable)

These fields are the 16 bit I/O redirection vectors for the five logical devices: console input, console output, auxiliary input, auxiliary output, and the list device. (See Section 3.4.2, "Character I/O Functions.")

@BNKBF (Read-Only Variable)

@BNKBF contains the address of a 128 byte buffer in the resident portion of the BDOS in a banked system. This buffer is available for use during BOOT and WBOOT only. You can use it to transfer a copy of the CCP from an image in an alternate bank if the system does not support interbank moves.

@CRDMA, @FX, @USRCD, @ERDSK (Read-Only Variable)

These variables contain the current DMA address, the BDOS function number, the current user code, and the disk code of the drive on which the last error occurred. They can be displayed when a BDOS error is intercepted by the BIOS. See ?ERJMP.

@CRDSK (Read-Only Variable)

@CRDSK is the current default drive, set by BDOS Function 14.

@VINFO, @RESEL (Read-Only Variable)

If @RESEL is equal to OFFH then @VINFO contains the address of a valid FCB. If @RESEL is not equal to OFFH, then @VINFO is undefined. You can use @VINFO to display the filespec when the BIOS intercepts a BDOS error.

Table 3-1. (continued)

Field Meaning

@MLTIO (Read-Write Variable)

@MLTIO contains the current multisector count. The BIOS can change the multisector count directly, or through BDOS Function 44. The value of the multisector count can range from 1 to 128.

@ERMDE (Read-Only Variable)

@ERMDE contains the current BDOS error mode. 0FFH indicates the BDOS is returning error codes to the application program without displaying any error messages. 0FEH indicates the BDOS is both displaying and returning errors. Any other value indicates the BDOS is displaying errors without notifying the application program.

@MEDIA (Read-Write Variable)

@MEDIA is global system flag indicating that a drive door has been opened. The BIOS routine that detects the open drive door sets this flag to 0FFH. The BIOS routine also sets the MEDIA byte in the Disk Parameter Header associated with the open-door drive to 0FFH.

@BFLGS (Read-Only Variable)

The BDOS in CP/M 3 produces two kinds of error messages: short error messages and extended error messages. Short error messages display one or two lines of text. Long error messages display a third line of text containing the filename, filetype, and BDOS Function Number involved in the error.

In banked systems, GENCPM sets this flag in the System Control Block to indicate whether the BIOS displays short or extended error messages. Your error message handler should check this byte in the System Control Block. If the highorder bit, bit 7, is set to 0, the BDOS displays short error messages. if the highorder bit is set to 1, the BDOS displays the extended three-line error messages. Table 3-1. (continued)

Field Meaning

@BFLGS (continued)

For example, the BDOS displays the following error message if the BIOS returns an error from READ and the BDOS is displaying long error messages.

CP/M Error on d: Disk I/O BDOS Function = nn File = filename.typ

In the above error message, Function nn and filename.typ represent BDOS function number and file specification involved, respectively.

@DATE (Read-Write Variable)

The number of days since 31 December 1977, expressed as a 16-bit unsigned integer, low byte first. A real-time clock interrupt can update the @DATE field to indicate the current date.

@HOUR, @MIN, @SEC (Read-Write Variable)

These 2-digit Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) fields indicate the current hour, minute, and second if updated by a real-time clock interrupt.

?ERJMP (Read-Write Code Label)

The BDOS calls the error message subroutine through this jump instruction. Register C contains an error code as follows:

- 1 Permanent Error
- 2 Read Only Disk
- 3 Read Only File
- 4 Select Error
- 7 Password Error
- 8 File Exists
- 9 ? in Filename

Error code 1 above results in the BDOS message Disk I/O.

Table 3-1. (continued)

Field Meaning

?ERJMP (continued)

The ?ERJMP vector allows the BIOS to intercept the BDOS error messages so you can display them in a foreign language. Note that this vector is not branched to if the application program is expecting return codes on physical errors. Refer to the CP/M Plus Programmer's Guide for more information.

?ERJMP is set to point to the default (English) error message routine contained in the BDOS. The BOOT routine can modify the address at ?ERJMP+L to point to an alternate message routine. Your error message handler can refer to @FX,
@VINFO (if @RESEL is equal to OFFH), @CRDMA, @CRDSK, and
@USRCD to print additional error information. Your error handler should return to the BDOS with a RET instruction after printing the appropriate message.

@MXTPA (Read-Only Variable)

@MXTPA contains the address of the current BDOS entry point. This is also the address of the top of the TPA. The BOOT and WBOOT routines of the BIOS must use this address to initialize the BDOS entry JMP instruction at location 005H, during system initialization. Each time a RSX is loaded, @MXTPA is adjusted by the system to reflect the change in the available User Memory (TPA).

3.2 Character I/O Data Structures

TheBIOS data structure CHRTBL is a character table describing the physical I/O devices. CHRTBL contains 6-byte physical device names and the characteristics of each physical device. These characteristics include a mode byte, and the current baud rate, if any, of the device. The DEVICE utility references the physical devices through the names and attributes contained in your CHRTBL. DEVICE can also display the physical names and characteristics in your CHRTBL.

The mode byte specifies whether the device is an input or output device, whether it has a selectable baud rate, whether it is a serial device, and if XON/XOFF protocol is enabled.

Listing 3-2 shows a sample character device table that the DEVICE utility uses to set and display I/O direction.

; sample character device table

chrtbl db 'CRT ' ; console VDT db mb\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$soft\$baud db baud\$9600 db 'LPT ' ; system serial printer db mb\$output+mb\$serial+mb\$soft\$baud+mb\$xon db baud\$9600 db 'TI810' ; alternate printer db mb\$output+mb\$serial+mb\$soft\$baud db baud\$9600 db 'MODEM ' ; 300 baud modem port db mb\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$soft\$baud db baud\$300 db 'VAX ' ; interface to VAX 11/780 db mb\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$soft\$baud db baud\$9600 db 'DIABLO' Diablo 630 daisy wheel printer db mb%output+mb%serial+mb%soft%baud+mb%xon%xoff db baud\$1200 db 'CEN ' ; Centronics type parallel printer db mb\$output db baud\$none ; table terminator db 0

Listing 3-2. Sample Character Device Table

Listing 3-3 shows the equates for the fields contained in the sample character device table. Many systems do not support all of these baud rates.

mb\$input	equ	0000\$000lb	; device may do input
mb\$output	equ	0000\$0010b	; device may do output
mb\$in\$out	equ	mb\$input+mb\$output	; dev may do both
mb\$soft\$baud	equ	0000\$0100b	; software selectable baud rates
mb\$serial	equ	0000\$1000b	; device may use protocol
mb\$xon\$xoff	equ	0001\$0000b	; XON/XOFF protocol
; equates for baud ra	te by	rte	
baud\$none	equ	0	; no baud rate
			; associated with device
baud\$50	equ	1	; 50 baud
baud\$75	equ	2	; 75 baud
baud\$110	equ	3	; 110 baud
baud\$134	equ	4	; 134.5 baud
baud\$150	equ	5	; 150 baud
baud\$300	equ	6	; 300 baud
baud\$600	equ	7	; 600 baud
baud\$1200	equ	8	; 1200 baud
baud\$1800	equ	9	; 1800 baud
baud\$2400	equ	10	; 2400 baud
baud\$3600	equ	11	; 3600 baud
baud\$4800	equ	12	; 4800 baud
baud\$7200	equ	13	; 7200 baud
baud\$9600	equ	14	; 9600 baud
baud\$19200	equ	15	; 19.2k baud

; equates for mode byte fields

Listing 3-3. Equates for Mode Byte Bit Fields

3.3 BIOS Disk Data Structures

The BIOS includes tables that describe the particular characteristics of the disk subsystem used with CP/M 3. This section describes the elements of these tables.

In general, each disk drive has an associated Disk Parameter Header (DPH) that contains information about the disk drive and provides a scratche>ad area for certain BDOS operations. One of the elements of this Disk Parameter Header is a pointer to the Disk Parameter Block (DPB), which contains the actual disk description.

In the banked system, only the Disk Parameter Block must reside in common memory. The DPHS, checksum vectors, allocation vectors, Buffer Control Blocks, and Directory Buffers can reside in common memory or Bank 0. The hash tables can reside in common memory or any bank except Bank 1. The data buffers can reside in banked memory if you implement the XMOVE function. Figure 3-1 shows the relationships between the drive table, the Disk Parameter Header, and the Data and Directory Buffer Control Block fields and their respective data structures and buffers.

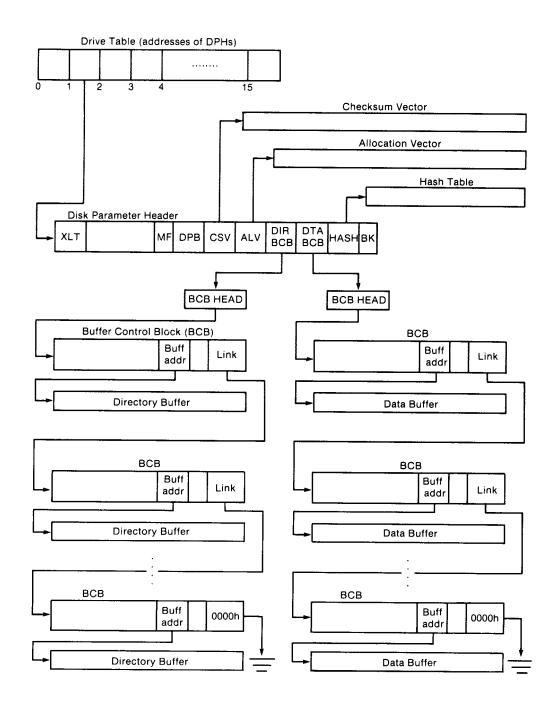
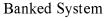


Figure 3-1. Disk Data Structures in a



3.3.1 Drive Table

The drive table consists of 16 words containing the addresses of the Disk Parameter Headers for each logical drive name, A through P, and takes the general form:

drivetable	dw	dpho
	dw	dphl
	dw	dph2
	•	
	dw	dphf

If a logical drive does not exist in your system, the corresponding entry in the drive table must be zero.

The GENCPM utility accesses the drive table to locate the various disk parameter data structures, so that it can determine which system configuration to use, and optionally allocate the various buffers itself. You must supply a drive table if you want GENCPM to do this allocation. If certain addresses in the Disk Parameter Headers referenced by this drive table are set to 0FFFEH, GENCPM allocates the appropriate data structures and updates the DPH. You can supply the drive table even if you have performed your own memory allocation. See the BIOS DRVTBL function described in Section 3.4.1.

3.3.2 Disk Parameter Header

In Figure 3-2, which shows the format of the Disk Parameter Header, b refers to bits.

XLT	-0-	MF	DPB	CSV	ALV	DIRBCB	DTABCB	HASH	HBANK.
16b	72b	8b	16b	16b	16b	16b	16b	16b	8b

Figure 3-2.	Disk Parameter Header Format
-------------	------------------------------

Table 3-2 describes the fields of the Disk Parameter Header.

Table 3-2. Disk Parameter Header Fields

Field Comments

XLT Set the XLT field to the address of the logical to hysical sector translation table. If there is no sector translation and the logical and physical sector numbers are the same, set XLT to 0000H. Disk drives with identical sector skew factors can share the same translation table.

XLT is the value passed to SECTRN in registers DE. Usually the translation table consists of one byte per physical sector. Generally, it is advisable to keep the number of physical sectors per logical track to a reasonable value to prevent the translation table from becoming too large. In the case of disks with multiple heads, you can compute the head number from the track address rather than the sector address.

- -0- These 72 bits (9 bytes) of zeroes are the scratch area the BDOS uses to maintain various parameters associated with the drive.
- MF MF is the Media Flag. The BDOS resets MF to zero when the drive is logged in. The BIOS can set this flag and @MEDIA in the SCB to 0FFH if it detects that a drive door has been opened. If the flag is set to 0FFH, the BDOS checks for a media change prior to performing the next BDOS file operation on that drive. If the BDOS determines that the drive contains a new volume, the BDOS performs a login on that drive, and resets the MF flag to 00H. Note that the BDOS checks this flag only when a system call is made, and not during an operation. Usually, this flag is used only by systems that support door-open interrupts.
- DPB Set the DPB f ield to the address of a Disk Parameter Block that describes the characteristics of the disk drive. Several Disk Parameter Headers can address the same Disk Parameter Block if their drive characteristics are identical. (The Disk Parameter Block is described in Section 3.3.3.)

Table 3-2. (continued)

Field

Comment	s
	э.

- CSV CSV is the address of a scratchpad area used to detect changed disks. This address must be different for each removable media Disk Parameter Header. There must be one byte for every 4 directory entries (or 128 bytes of directory). In other words, length(CSV) = (DRM/4)+1. (See Table 3-3 for an explanation of the DRM field.) If the drive is permanently mounted, set the CKS variable in the DPB to 8000H and set CSV to 0000H. This way, no storage is reserved for a checksum vector. The checksum vector may be located in common memory or in Bank 0. Set CSV to 0FFFEH for GENCPM to set up the checksum vector.
- ALV ALV is the address of the scratchpad area called the allocation vector, which the BDOS uses to keep disk storage allocation information. This area must be unique for each drive.

The allocation vector usually requires 2 bits for each block on the drive. Thus, length(ALV) = (DSM/4) + 2. (See Table 3-3 for an explanation of the DSM field.) In the nonbanked version of CP/M 3, you can optionally specify that GENCPM reserve only one bit in the allocation vector per block on the drive. In this case, length(ALV) = (DSM/8) +

The GENCPM option to use single-bit allocation vectors is provided in the nonbanked version of CP/M 3 because additional memory is required by the double-bit allocation vector. This option applies to all drives on the system.

With double-bit allocation vectors, CP/M 3 automatically frees, at every system warm start, all file blocks that are not permanently recorded in the directory. Note that file space allocated to a file is not permanently recorded in a directory unless the file is closed. Therefore, the allocation vectors in memory can indicate that space is allocated although directory records indicate that space is free for allocation. With single-bit allocation vectors, CP/M 3 requires that a drive be reset before this space can be reclaimed. Because it increases performance, CP/M 3 does not reset disks at system warm start. Thus, with single-bit allocation vectors, if you do not reset the disk system, DIR and SHOW can report an inaccurate amount of free space. With single-bit

Table 3-2. (continued)

Field I Comments

ALV allocation vectors, the user must type a CTRL-C at the system prompt to (continued) reset the disk system to ensure accurate reporting of free space. Set ALV to 0FFFEH for GENCPM to automatically assign space for the allocation vector, single- or double-bit, during system generation. In the nonbanked system, GENCPM prompts for the type of allocation vector. In the banked system, the allocation vector is always double-bit and can reside in common memory or Bank 0. When GENCPM automatically assigns space for the allocation vector (ALV = OFFFEH), it places the allocation vector in Bank 0.

DIRBCB Set DIRBCB to the address of a single directory Buffer Control Block (BCB) in an unbanked system. Set DIRBCB to the address of a BCB list head in a banked system.

Set DIRBCB to OFFFEH for GENCPM to set up the DIRBCB field. The BDOS uses directory buffers for all accesses of the disk directory. Several DPHs can refer to the same directory BCB or BCB list head; or, each DPH can reference an independent BCB or BCB list head. Section 3.3.4 describes the format of the Buffer Control Block.

DTABCB Set DTABCB to the address of a single data BCB in an unbanked system. Set DTABCB to the address of a data BCB list head in a banked system.

> Set DTABCB to OFFFEH for GENCPM to set up the DTABCB field. The BDOS uses data buffers to hold physical sectors so that it can block and deblock logical 128-byte records. If the physical record size of the media associated with a DPH is 128 bytes, you can set the DTABCB field of the DPH to 0FFFFH, because in this case, the BDOS does not use a data buffer.

HASH HASH contains the address of the optional directory hashing table associated with a DPH. Set HASH to 0FFFFH to disable directory hashing.

Table 3-2. (continued)

Field

Comments

HASH Set RASH to OFFFEH to make directory hashing on the drive a (continued) GENCPM option. Each DPH using hashing must reference a unique hash table. If a hash table is supplied, it must be 4*(DRM+l) bytes long, where DRM is one less than the length of the directory. In other words, the hash table must contain four bytes for each directory entry of the disk.

HBANK Set HBANK to the bank number of the hash table. HBANK is not used in unbanked systems and should be set to zero. The hash tables can be contained in the system bank, common memory, or any alternate bank except Bank 1, because hash tables cannot be located in the Transient Program Area. GENCPM automatically sets HBANK when HASH is set to 0FFFEH.

3.3.3 Disk Parameter Block

Figure 3-3 shows the format of the Disk Parameter Block, where b refers to bits.

SPT	BSH	BLM	EXM	DSM	DRM	AL0	AL1	СКЅ	OFF	PSH	РНМ
16b	8b	8b	8b	16b	16b	8b	8b	16b	16b	8b	8b

Figure 3-3. Disk Parameter Block Format

Table 3-3 describes the fields of the Disk Parameter Block.

Table 3-3. Disk Parameter Block Fields

Field		Comments
SPT		Set SPT to the total number of 128-byte logical records per track.
BSH		Data allocation block shift factor. The value of BSH is determined by the data block allocation size.
BLM	size.	Block mask. The value of BLM is determined by the data block allocation

Ta Field	able 3-3. (continued) Comments
EXM	Extent mask determined by the data block allocation size and the number of disk blocks.
DSM	Determines the total storage capacity of the disk drive. DSM is one less than the total number of blocks on the drive.
DRM	Total number of directory entries minus one that can be stored on this drive. The directory requires 32 bytes per entry.
ALO, ALI	Determine reserved directory blocks. See Figure 3-4 for more information.
	The size of the directory check vector, @DRM/4)+1. Set bit 15 of CKS to ne drive is permanently mounted. Set CKS to 8000H to indicate the drive is permanently mounted and directory checksumming is not red.
	Note: full directory checksumming is required on removable media to support the automatic login feature of CP/M 3.
OFF the tr	The number of reserved tracks at the beginning of the logical disk. 0FF is ack on which the directory starts.
PSH	Specifies the physical record shift factor.
PHM	Specifies the physical record mask.
	ttes disk space in a unit called a block. Blocks are also called allocation units,

CP/M allocates disk space in a unit called a block. Blocks are also called allocation units, or clusters. BLS is the number of bytes in a block. The block size can be 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, or 16384 (decimal) bytes.

A large block size decreases the size of the allocation vectors but can result in wasted disk space. A smaller block size increases the size of the allocation vectors because there are more blocks on the same size disk.

There is a restriction on the block size. If the block size is 1024, there cannot be more than 255 blocks present on a logical drive. In other words, if the disk is larger than 256K, it is necessary to use at least 2048 byte blocks.

The value of BLS is not a field in the Disk Parameter Block; rather, it is derived from the values of BSH and BLM as given in Table 3-4.

Table	3-4. BSH and BLM	Values
BLS	BSH	BLM
1,024	3	7
2,048	4	15
4,096	5	31
8,192	6	63
16,384	7	127

The block mask, BLM, equals one less than the number of 128- byte records in an allocation unit, (BLS/128 - 1), or $(2^{**}BSH)$ -l.

The value of the Block Shift Factor, BSH, is determined by the data block allocation size. The Block Shift Factor (BSH) equals the logarithm base two of the block size in 128-byte records, or LOG2 (BLS/128), where LOG2 represents the binary logarithm function.

The value of EXM depends upon both the BLS and whether the DSM value is less than 256 or greater than 255, as shown in Table 3-5.

Table 3-5.	Maximum EXK	Values
------------	-------------	--------

BLS	EXM v	alues
	DSM<256	DSM>255
1,024	0	N/A
2, 048	1	0
4, 096	3	1
8,192	7	3
16, 384	15	7

The value of EXM is one less than the maximum number of 16K extents per FCB.

Set EXM to zero if you want media compatibility with an extended CP/M 1.4 system. This only applies to double-density CP/M 1.4 systems, with disk sizes greater than 256K bytes. It is preferable to copy double-density 1.4 disks to single-density, then reformat them and recreate them with the CP/M 3 system, because CP/M 3 uses directory entries more effectively than CP/M 1.4.

DSM is one less than the total number of blocks on the drive. DSM must be less than or equal to 7FFFH. If the disk uses 1024 byte blocks (BSH=3, BLM=7), DSM must be less than or equal to OOFFH. The product BLS*(DSM+1) is the total number of bytes the drive holds and must be within the capacity of the physical disk. It does not include the reserved operating system tracks.

The DRM entry is one less than the total number of 32-byte directory entries, and is a 16-bit value. DRM must be less than or equal to (BLS/32 * 16) - 1. DRM determines the values of AL0 and ALI. The two fields AL0 and ALI can together be considered a string of 16 bits, as shown in Figure 3-4.

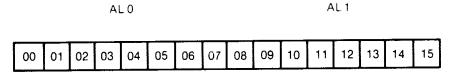


Figure 3-4. ALO and ALI

Position 00 corresponds to the high-order bit of the byte labeled AL0, and position 15 corresponds to the low-order bit of the byte labeled ALI. Each bit position reserves a data block for a number of directory entries, thus allowing a maximum of 16 data blocks to be assigned for directory entries. Bits are assigned starting at 00 and filled to the right until position 15. AL0 and ALI overlay the first two bytes of the allocation vector for the associated drive. Table 3-6 shows DRM maximums for the various block sizes.

Table 3-6. BLS and Number of Directory Entries

BLS	Directory Entries	Maximum DRM
1,024	32 * reserved blocks	511
2,048	64 * reserved blocks	1,023
4,096	128 * reserved blocks	2,047
8,192	256 * reserved blocks	4,095
16,384	512 * reserved blocks	8,191

If DRM = 127 (128 directory entries), and BLS = 1024, there are 32 directory entries per block, requiring 4 reserved blocks. In this case, the 4 high-order bits of AL0 are set, resulting in the values AL0 = OF0H and AL1 = 00H. The maximum directory allocation is 16 blocks where the block size is determined by BSH and BLM.

The OFF field determines the number of tracks that are skipped at the beginning of the physical disk. It can be used as a mechanism for skipping reserved operating system tracks, which on system disks contain the Cold Boot Loader, CPMLDR, and possibly the CCP. It is also used to partition a large disk into smaller segmented sections.

PSH and PHM determine the physical sector size of the disk. All disk I/O is in terms of the physical sector size. Set PSH and PSM to zero if the BIOS is blocking and deblocking instead of the BDOS.

PSH specifies the physical record shift factor, ranging from 0 to 5, corresponding to physical record sizes of 128, 256, 512, 1K, 2K, or 4K bytes. It is equal to the logarithm base two of the physical record size divided by 128, or LOG2(sector-size/128). See Table 3-7 for PSH values.

PHM specifies the physical record mask, ranging from 0 to 31, corresponding to physical record sizes of 128, 256, 512, 1K, 2K, or 4K bytes. It is equal to one less than the sector size divided by 128, or, (sector-size/128)-1. See Table 3-7 for PHM values.

Table 3-7. PSH and PHN Values

Sector size	PSH	PHM
5120	F 511	FILIVI
128	0	0
256	1	1
512	2	3
1,024	3	7
2,048	4	15
4,096	5	31

3.3.4 Buffer Control Block

A Buffer Control Block (BCB) locates physical record buffers for the BDOS. The BDOS uses the BCB to manage the physical record buffers during processing. More than one Disk Parameter Header can specify the same BCB. The GENCPM utility can create the Buffer Control Block.

Note that the BANK and LINK fields of the Buffer Control Block are present only in the banked system. Therefore, the Buffer Control Block is twelve bytes long in the nonbanked system, and fifteen bytes long in the banked system. Note also that only the DRV, BUFFAD, BANK, and LINK fields need to contain initial values. In Figure 3-5, which shows the form of the Buffer Control Block, b refers to bits.

ſ	DRV	REC#	WFLG	00	TRACK	SECTOR	BUFFAD	BANK	LINK
ſ	8b	24b	8b	8b	16b	16b	16b	8b	16b

Figure 3-5. Buffer Control Block Format

Table 3-8 describes the fields of each Buffer Control Block.

Table 3-8. Buffer Control Block Fields

Field	Comment
DRV	Identifies the disk drive associated with the record contained in the buffer located at address BUFFAD. If you do not use GENCPM to allocate buffers, you must set the DRV field to 0FFH.
REC#	Identifies the record position of the current contents of the buffer located at address BUFFAD. REC# consists of the absolute sector number of the record where the first record of the directory is zero.
WFLG	Set by the BDOS to OFFH to indicate that the buffer contains new data that has not yet been written to disk. When the data is written, the BDOS sets the WFLG to zero to indicate the buffer is no longer dirty.
00	Scratch byte used by BDOS.
TRACK	Contains the physical track location of the contents of the buffer.
SECTOR	Contains the physical sector location of the contents of the buffer.
BUFFAD	Specifies the address of the buffer associated with this BCB.
BANK	Contains the bank number of the buffer associated with this BCB. This field is only present in banked systems.
LINK	Contains the address of the next BCB in a linked list, or zero if this is the last BCB in the linked list. The LINK field is present only in banked

The BDOS distinguishes between two kinds of buffers: data buffers referenced by DTABCB, and directory buffers referenced by DIRBCB. In a banked system, the DIRBCB and DTABCB fields of a Disk Parameter Header each contain the address of a BCB list head rather than the address of an actual BCB. A BCB list head is a word containing the address of the first BCB in a linked list. If several DPHs reference the same BCB list, they must reference the same BCB list head. Each BCB has a LINK field that contains the address of the next BCB in the list, or zero if it is the last BCB.

systems.

In banked systems, the one-byte BANK field indicates the bank in which the data buffers are located. The BANK field of directory BCBs must be zero because directory buffers must be located in Bank 0, usually below the banked BDOS module, or in common memory. The BANK field is for systems that support direct memory-to-memory transfers from one bank to another. (See the BIOS XMOVE entry point in section 3.4.4.)

The BCD data structures in a banked system must reside in Bank 0 or in common memory. The buffers of data BCBs can be located in any bank except Bank I (the Transient Program Area).

For banked systems that do not support interbank block moves through XMOVE, the BANK field must be set to 0 and the data buffers must reside in common memory. The directory buffers can be in Bank 0 even if the system does not support bank-to-bank moves.

In the nonbanked system, the DPH, DIRBCB, and DTABCB can point to the same BCB if the DPH defines a fixed media device. For devices with removable media, the DPH DIRBCB and the DPH DTABCB must reference different BCBS. In banked systems, the DPH DIRBCB and DTABCB must point to separate list heads.

In general, you can enhance the performance of CP/M 3 by allocating more BCBS, but the enhancement reduces the amount of TPA memory in nonbanked systems.

If you set the DPH DIRBCB or the DPH DTABCB fields to 0FFFEH, the GENCPM utility creates BCBS, allocates physical record buffers, and sets these fields to the address of the BCBS. This allows you to write device drivers without regard to buffer requirements.

3.3.5 Data Structure Macro Definitions

Several macro definitions are supplied with CP/M 3 to simplify the creation of some of the data structures in the BIOS. These macros are defined in the library file CPM3.LIB on the distribution disk.

To reference these macros in your BIOS, include the following statement:

MACLIB CPM3

DTBL Macro

Use the DTBL macro to generate the drive table, DRVTBL. It has one parameter, a list of the DPHs in your system. The list is enclosed in angle brackets.

The form of the DTBL macro call is label: DTBL <DPHA,DPHB,...,DPHP>

where DPHA is the address of the DPH for drive A, DPHB is the address of the DPH for drive B, up to drive P. For example,

DRVTBL: DTBL <ACSHDO,FDSDO,FDSD1>

This example generates the drive table for a three-drive system. The DTBL macro always generates a sixteen-word table, even if you supply fewer DPH names. The unused entries are set to zero to indicate the corresponding drives do not exist.

DPH Macro

The DPH macro routine generates a Disk Parameter Header (DPH). It requires two parameters: the address of the skew table for this drive, and the address of the Disk Parameter Block (DPB). Two parameters are optional: the maximum size of the checksum vector, and the maximum size of the allocation vector. If you omit the maximum size of the checksum vector and the maximum size of the allocation vector from the DPH macro invocation, the corresponding fields of the Disk Parameter Header are set to OFFFEH so that GENCPM automatically allocates the vectors.

The form of the DPH macro call is

label: DPH ?trans,?dpb,[?csize],[?asizel

where:

?trans	is the address of the translation vector for this
	drive;
?dpb	is the address of the DPB for this drive;
?csize	is the maximum size in bytes of the checksum
	vector;
?asize	is the maximum size in bytes of the allocation
	vector.

The following example, which includes all four parameters, shows a typical DPH macro invocation for a standard single-density disk drive:

FDSDO: DPH SKEW6,DPB\$SD,16,31

SKEW Macro

The SKEW macro generates a skew table and requires the following parameters: the number of physical sectors per track, the skew factor, and the first sector number on each track (usually 0 or 1).

The form of the SKEW macro call is label: SKEW ?secs,?skf,?fsc

where:

?secs	is the number of physical sectors per track;
?skf	is the sector skew factor;
?fsc	is the first sector number on each track.

The following macro invocation generates the skew table for a standard single-density disk drive.

```
SKEW6: SKEW 26,6,1
```

DPB Macro

The DPB macro generates a Disk Parameter Block specifying the characteristics of a drive type. It requires six parameters: the physical sector size in bytes, the number of physical sectors per track, the total number of tracks on the drive, the size of an allocation unit in bytes, the number of directory entries desired, and the number of system tracks to reserve at the beginning of the drive. There is an optional seventh parameter that defines the CKS field in the DPB. If this parameter is missing, CKS is calculated from the directory entries parameter.

The form of the DPB macro call is label: DPB ?psize,?pspt,?trks,?bls,?ndirs,?off[,?ncks]

where:

?psize	is the	physical sector size in bytes;
?pspt	is the	number of physical sectors per track;
?trks	is the	number of tracks on the drive;
?bls	is the	allocation unit size in bytes;
?ndirs	is the	number of directory entries;
?off	is the	number of tracks to reserve;
?ncks	is the	number of checked directory entries.

The following example shows the parameters for a standard single-density disk drive:

DPB\$SD: DPB 128,26,77,1024,64,2

The DPB macro can be used only when the disk drive is under eight megabytes. DPBs for larger disk drives must be constructed by hand.

3.4 BIOS Subroutine Entry Points

This section describes the entry parameters, returned values, and exact responsibilities of each BIOS entry point in the BIOS jump vector. The routines are arranged by function. Section 3.4.1 describes system initialization. Section 3.4.2 presents the character I/O functions, followed by Section 3.4.3, discussing the disk I/O functions. Section 3.4.4 discusses the BIOS memory select and move functions. The last section, 3.4.5, discusses the BIOS clock support function. Table 3-9 shows the BIOS entry points the BDOS calls to perform each of the four categories of system functions.

Table 3-9. Functional Organization of BIOS Entry Points

Operation Function

System Initialization BOOT, WBOOT, DEVTBL, DEVINI, DRVTBL,

Character I/O

CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, LIST, AUXOUT, AUXIN, LISTST, CONOST, AUXIST, AUXOST

Disk I/O

HOME, SELDSK, SETTRK, SETSEC, SETDMA, READ, WRITE, SECTRN, MULTIO, FLUSH

Memory Selects and Moves MOVE, XMOVE, SELMEM, SETBNK

Clock Support TIME

Table 3-10 is a summary showing the CP/M 3 BIOS function numbers, jump instruction names, and the entry and return parameters of each jump instruction in the table, arranged according to the BIOS function number.

	10. CF/WIS BIOS Func	tion jump rable summary
No. Functior	n Input	Output
0 BOOT	None	None
1 WBOOT	None None	None
2 CONST	None	A=0FFH if ready
		A=00H if not ready
3 CONIN	None	A=Con Char
4 CONOU	T C=Con Char	None
5 LIST	C=Char	None
6 AUXOU		None
7 AUXIN	None	A=Char
8 HOME	None	None
9 SELDSK	C=Drive 0-15	HL=DPH addr
	E=Init Sel Flag	HL=000H if invalid dr.
10 SETTRI	•	None
11 SETSEC		None
12 SETDM		None
13 READ	None	A=00H if no Err
	Ttolle	A=01H if Non-recov Err
		A=0FFH if media changed
14 WRITE	C=Deblk Code	A=00H if no Err
IF WRITE	C-Debik Code	A=01H if Phys Err
		A=02H if Dsk is R/O
		A=0FFH if media changed
15 LISTST	None	A=00H if not ready
15 LISISI	None	A=0FFH if ready
16 SECTRI	N BC=Log Sect No	HL=Phys Sect No
IU SECIKI	DE=Trans Tbl Adr	TIL-Fillys Sect No
17 CONOS		A -00H if not ready
17 CONOS	i None	A=00H if not ready A=0FFH if ready
18 AUXIST	Г None	A=0FFH If leady A=0H if not ready
10 AUAIS	None	A=0FFH if ready
	T None	
19 AUXOS	i none	A=00H if not ready
	L None	A=0FFH if ready HL=Chrtbl addr
20 DEVTB		
21 DEVINI		None
22 DRVTB	L None	HL=Drv Tbl addr
		HL=0FFFFH
23 MULTI	C Mult See Crt	HL=0FFFEH None
	O C=Mult Sec Cnt None	
24 FLUSH	None	A=000H if no err
		A=001H if phys err
25 MONE		A=002H if disk R/O
25 MOVE	HL=Dest Adr	HL & DE point to next
	DE=Source Adr	bytes following MOVE
	BC=Count	N
26 TIME	C=Get/Set Flag	None
27 SELME		None
28 SETBN		None
29 XMOVE		None
	C=Source Bank	

Table 3-10. (continued)

No. I Function Input

30	USERF	Reserved for System Implementor
31	RESERV1	Reserved for Future Use
32	RESERV2	Reserved for Future Use

3.4.1 System Initialization Functions

This section defines the BIOS system initialization routines BOOT, WBOOT, DEVTBL, DEVINI, and DRVTBL.

BIOS Function 0: BOOT

Get Control from Cold Start Loader and Initialize System

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: None

The BOOT entry point gets control from the Cold Start Loader in Bank 0 and is responsible for basic system initialization. Any remaining hardware initialization that is not done by the boot ROMS, the Cold Boot Loader, or the LDRBIOS should be performed by the BOOT routine.

The BOOT routine must perform the system initialization outlined in Section 2.3, "System Initialization." This includes initializing Page Zero jumps and loading the CCP. BOOT usually prints a sign-on message, but this can be omitted. Control is then transferred to the CCP in the TPA at 0100H.

To initialize Page Zero, the BOOT routine must place a jump at location 0000H to BIOS base + 3, the BIOS warm start entry point. The BOOT routine must also place a jump instruction at location 0005H to the address contained in the System Control Block variable, @MXTPA.

The BOOT routine must establish its own stack area if it calls any BDOS or BIOS routines. In a banked system, the stack is in Bank 0 when the Cold BOOT routine is entered. The stack must be placed in common memory.

BIOS Function 1: WBOOT

Get Control When a Warm Start Occurs

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: None

The WBOOT entry point is entered when a warm start occurs. A warm start is performed whenever a user program branches to location 0000H or attempts to return to the CCP. The WBOOT routine must perform the system initialization outlined in BIOS Function 0, including initializing Page zero jumps and loading the CCP.

When your WBOOT routine is complete, it must transfer control to the CCP at location 0100H in the TPA.

Note that the CCP does not reset the disk system at warm start. The CCP resets the disk system when a CTRL-C is pressed following the system prompt.

Note also that the BIOS stack must be in common memory to make BDOS function calls. Only the BOOT and WBOOT routines can perform BDOS function calls.

If the WBOOT routine is reading the CCP from a file, it must set the multisector I/O count, @MLTIO in the System Control Block, to the number of 128-byte records to be read in one operation before reading CCP.COM. You can directly set @MLTIO in the SCB, or you can call BDOS Function 44 to set the multisector count in the SCS.

If blocking/deblocking is done in the BIOS instead of in the BDOS, the WBOOT routine must discard all pending buffers.

BIOS Function 20: DEVTBL

Return Address of Character I/O Table

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: HL=address of Chrtbl

The DEVTBL and DEVINI entry points allow you to support device assignment with a flexible, yet completely optional system. It replaces the IOBYTE facility of CP/M 2.2. Note that the CHRTBL must be in common in banked systems.

BIOS Function 21: DEVINI

Initialize Character I/O Device

Entry Parameters: C=device number, 0-15

Returned Values: None

The DEVINI routine initializes the physical character device specified in register C to the baud rate contained in the appropriate entry of the CHRTBL. It need only be supplied if I/O redirection has been implemented and is referenced only by the DEVICE utility supplied with CP/M 3.

BIOS Function 22: DRVTBL

Return Address of Disk Drive Table

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: HL=Address of Drive Table of Disk Parameter Headers (DPH); Hashing can utilized if specified by the DPHs Referenced by this DRVTBL. HL=0FFFFH if no Drive Table; GENCPM does not set up buffers. Hashing is supported. HL=0FFFEH if no Drive Table; GENCPM does not set up buffers. Hashing is not supported.

The first instruction of this subroutine must be an LXI H,<address> where <address> is one of the above returned values. The GENCPM utility accesses the address in this instruction to locate the drive table and the disk parameter data structures to determine which system configuration to use.

If you plan to do your own blocking/deblocking, the first instruction of the DRVTBL routine must be the following:

lxi h,0FFFEh

You must also set the PSH and PSM fields of the associated Disk Parameter Block to zero.

3.4.2 Character I/O Functions

This section defines the CP/M 3 character I/O routines CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, LIST, AUXOUT, AUXIN, LISTST, CONOST, AUXIST, and AUXOST.

CP/M 3 assumes all simple character I/O operations are performed in eight-bit ASCII, upper and lowercase, with no parity. ANASCII CTRL-Z (IAH) denotes an end-of-file condition for an input device.

In CP/M 3, you can direct each of the five logical character devices to any combination of up to twelve physical devices. Each of the five logical devices has a 16-bit vector in the System Control Block (SCB). Each bit of the vector represents a physical device where bit 15 corresponds to device zero, and bit 4 is device eleven. Bits 0 through 3 are reserved for future system use.

You can use the public names defined in the supplied SCB.ASM file to reference the I/O redirection bit vectors. The names are shown in Table 3-11.

Table 3-11. I/O Redirection Bit Vectors in SCB

NameLogical Device@CIVECConsole Input@COVECConsole Output@AIVECAuxiliary Input@AOVECAuxiliary Output@LOVECList Output

You should send an output character to all of the devices whose corresponding bit is set. An input character should be read from the first ready device whose corresponding bit is set.

An input status routine should return true if any selected device is ready. An output status routine should return true only if all selected devices are ready.

BIOS Function 2: CONST

Sample the Status of the Console Input Device

Entry Parameters: None

Returned value: A=0FFH if a console character is ready to read A=00H if no console character is ready to read

Read the status of the currently assigned console device and return 0FFH in register A if a character is ready to read, and 00H in register A if no console characters are ready.

BIOS Function 3: CONIN

Read a Character from the Console

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=Console Character

Read the next console character into register A with no parity. If no console character is ready, wait until a character is available'before returning.

BIOS Function 4: CONOUT

Output Character to Console

Entry Parameters: C=Console Character

Returned Values: None

Send the character in register C to the console output device. The character is in ASCII with no parity.

CP/M 3 System Guide

Character I/O Functions

BIOS Function 5: LIST

Output Character to List Device

Entry Parameters: C=Character

Returned Values: None

Send the character from register C to the listing device. The character is in ASCII with no parity.

BIOS Function 6: AUXOUT

Output a Character to the Auxiliary Output Device

Entry Parameters: C=Character

Returned Values: None

Send the character from register C to the currently assigned AUXOUT device. The character is in ASCII with no parity.

BIOS Function 7: AUXIN

Read a Character from the Auxiliary Input Device

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=Character

Read the next character from the currently assigned AUXIN device into register A with no parity. A returned ASCII CTRL-Z (IAH) reports an end-of-file.

BIOS Function 15: LISTST

Return the Ready Status of the List Device

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=00H if list device is not ready to accept a character A=0FFH if list device is ready to accept a character

The BIOS LISTST function returns the ready status of the list device.

BIOS Function 17: CONOST

Return Output Status of Console

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=0FFH if ready A=00H if not ready

The CONOST routine checks the status of the console. CONOST returns an OFFH if the console is ready to display another character. This entry point allows for full polled handshaking communications support.

BIOS Function 18: AUXIST Return Input Status of Auxiliary Port Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=0FFH if ready A=00H if not ready

The AUXIST routine checks the input status of the auxiliary port. This entry point allows full polled handshaking for communications support using an auxiliary port.

BIOS Function 19: AUXOST

Return Output Status of Auxiliary Port

Entry Parameters: None

Returned Values: A=0FFH if ready A=00H if not ready

The AUXOST routine checks the output status of the auxiliary port. This routine allows full polled handshaking for communications support using an auxiliary port.

3.4.3 Disk I/O Functions

This section defines the CP/M 3 BIOS disk I/O routines HOME, SELDSK, SETTRK, SETSEC, SETDMA, READ, WRITE, SECTRN, MULTIO, and FLUSH.

BIOS Function 8: HOME Select Track 00 of the Specified Drive Entry Parameters: None Returned Values: None

Return the disk head of the currently selected disk to the track 00 position. Usually, you can translate the HOME call into a call on SETTRK with a parameter of 0.

BIOS Function 9	SELDSK
Select the Specified	l Disk Drive
Entry Parameters:	C=Disk Drive (0-15) E=Initial Select Flag
Returned Values:	HL=Address of Disk Parameter Header (DPH) if drive exists HL=0000H if drive does not exist

Select the disk drive specified in register C for further operations, where register C contains 0 for drive A, 1 for drive B, and so on to 15 for drive P. On each disk select, SELDSK must return in HL the base address of a 25-byte area called the Disk Parameter Header. If there is an attempt to select a nonexistent drive, SELDSK returns HL=0000H as an error indicator.

On entry to SELDSK, you can determine if it is the first time the specified disk is selected. Bit 0, the least significant bit in register E, is set to 0 if the drive has not been previously selected. This information is of interest in systems that read configuration information from the disk to set up a dynamic disk definition table.

When the BDOS calls SELDSK with bit 0 in register E set to 1, SELDSK must return the same Disk Parameter Header address as it returned on the initial call to the drive. SELDSK can only return a 00H indicating an unsuccessful select on the initial select call.

SELDSK must return the address of the Disk Parameter Header on each call. Postpone the actual physical disk select operation until a READ or WRITE is performed, unless I/O is required for automatic density sensing.

BIOS Function 10: SETTRK Set Specified Track Number Entry Parameters: BC=Track Number Returned Values: None

Register BC contains the track number for a subsequent disk access on the currently selected drive. Normally, the track number is saved until the next READ or WRITE occurs.

BIOS Function 11: SETSEC

Set Specified Sector Number

Entry Parameters: BC=Sector Number

Returned Values: None

Register BC contains the sector number for the subsequent disk access on the currently selected drive. This number is the value returned by SECTRN. Usually, you delay actual sector selection until a READ or WRITE operation occurs.

BIOS Function 12: SETDMA Set Address for Subsequent Disk I/O Entry Parameters: BC=Direct Memory Access Address

Returned Values: None

Register BC contains the DMA (Direct Memory Access) address for the subsequent READ or WRITE operation. For example, if B = 00H and C = 80H when the BDOS calls SETDMA, then the subsequent read operation reads its data starting at 80H, or the subsequent write operation gets its data from 80H, until the next call to SETDMA occurs.

BIOS Function 13: READ

Read a Sector from the Specified Drive

Entry Parameters:	None
Returned Values:	A=000H if no errors occurred A=001H if nonrecoverable error condition occurred A=0FFH if media has changed

Assume the BDOS has selected the drive, set the track, set the sector, and specified the DMA address. The READ subroutine attempts to read one sector based upon these parameters, then returns one of the error codes in register A as described above.

If the value in register A is 0, then CP/M 3 assumes that the disk operation completed properly. If an error occurs, the BIOS should attempt several retries to see if the error is recoverable before returning the error code.

If an error occurs in a system that supports automatic density selection, the system should verify the density of the drive. If the density has changed, return a OFFH in the accumulator. This causes the BDOS to terminate the current operation and relog in the disk.

BIOS Function 14: WRITE

Write a Sector to the Specified Disk

Entry Parameters:	C=Deblocking Codes
Returned Values:	A=00H if no error occurred A=001H if physical error occurred A=002H if disk is Read-Only A=0FFH if media has changed

Write the data from the currently selected DMA address to the currently selected drive, track, and sector. Upon each call to WRITE, the BDOS provides the following information in register C:

0 = deferred write 1 = nondeferred write 2 = deferred write to the first sector of a new data block This information is provided for those BIOS implementations that do blocking/deblocking in the BIOS instead of the BDOS.

As in READ, the BIOS should attempt several retries before reporting an error.

If an error occurs in a system that supports automatic density selection, the system should verify the density of the drive. If the density has changed, return a 0FFH in the accumulator. This causes the BDOS to terminate the current operation and relog in the disk.

BIOS Function 16: SECTRNTranslate Sector Number Given Translate TableEntry Parameters:BC=Logical Sector Number
DE=Translate Table AddressReturned Values:HL=Physical Sector Number

SECTRN performs logical sequential sector address to physical sector translation to improve the overall response of CP/M 3. Digital Research ships standard CP/M disk with a skew factor of 6, where six physical sectors are skipped between each logical read operation. This skew factor allows enough time between sectors for most programs on a slow system to process their buffers without missing the next sector. In computer systems that use fast processors, memory, and disk subsystems, you can change the skew factor to improve overall response. Typically, most disk systems perform well with a skew of every other physical sector. You should maintain support of single-density, IBM 3740 compatible disks using a skew factor of 6 in your CP/M 3 system to allow information transfer to and from other CP/M users.

SECTRN receives a logical sector number in BC, and a translate table address in DE. The logical sector number is relative to zero. The translate table address is obtained from the Disk Parameter Block for the currently selected disk. The sector number is used as an index into the translate table, with the resulting physical sector number returned in HL. For standard, single-density, eight- inch disk systems, the tables and indexing code are provided in the sample BIOS and need not be changed.

Certain drive types either do not need skewing or perform the skewing externally from the system software. In this case, the skew table address in the DPH can be set to zero, and the SECTRN routine can check for the zero in DE and return with the physical sector set to the logical sector.

BIOS Function 23: MULTIO

Set Count of Consecutive Sectors for READ or WRITE

Entry Parameters: C=Multisector Count

Returned Values: None

To transfer logically consecutive disk sectors to or from contiguous memory locations, the BDOS issues a MULTIO call, followed by a series of READ or WRITE calls. This allows the BIOS to transfer multiple sectors in a single disk operation. The maximum value of the sector count is dependent on the physical sector size, ranging from 128 with 128-byte sectors, to 4 with 4096-byte sectors. Thus, the BIOS can transfer up to 16K directly to or from the TPA with a single operation.

The BIOS can directly transfer all of the specified sectors to or from the DMA buffer in one operation and then count down the remaining calls to READ or WRITE.

If the disk format uses a skew table to minimize rotational latency when single records are transferred, it is more difficult to optimize transfer time for multisector transfers. One way of utilizing the multisector count with a skewed disk format is to place the sector numbers and associated DMA addresses into a table until either the residual multisector count reaches zero, or the track number changes. Then you can sort the saved requests by physical sector to allow all of the required sectors on the track to be read in one rotation. Each sector must be transferred to or from its proper DMA address.

When an error occurs during a multisector transfer, you can either reset the multiple sector counters in the BIOS and return the error immediately, or you can save the error status and return it to the BDOS on the last READ or WRITE call of the MULTIO operation.

BIOS Function 24: FLUSH

Force Physical Buffer Flushing for User-supported Deblocking

Entry Parameters:	None
Returned Values:	A=00H if no error occurred A=001H if physical error occurred A=002H if disk is Read-Only

The flush buffers entry point allows the system to force physical sector buffer flushing when your BIOS is performing its own record blocking and deblocking.

The BDOS calls the FLUSH routine to ensure that no dirty buffers remain in memory. The BIOS should immediately write any buffers that contain unwritten data.

Normally, the FLUSH function is superfluous, because the BDOS supports blocking/deblocking internally. It is required, however, for those systems that support blocking/deblocking in the BIOS, as many CP/M 2.2 systems do.

Note: if you do not implement FLUSH, the routine must return a zero in register A. You can accomplish this with the following instructions:

xra ret а

3.4.4 Memory Select and Move Functions

This section defines the memory management functions MOVE, XMOVE, SELMEM, and SETBNK.

BIOS Function 25: MOVE

Memory-to-Memory Block Move

Entry Parameters:	HL=Destination address DE=Source address BC=Count
Returned Values:	HL and DE must point to next bytes following move operation

The BDOS calls the MOVE routine to perform memory to memory block moves to allow use of the Z80 LDIR instruction or special DMA hardware, if available. Note that the arguments in HL and DE are reversed from the Z80 machine instruction, necessitating the use of XCHG instructions on either side of the LDIR. The BDOS uses this routine for all large memory copy operations. On return, the HL and DE registers are expected to point to the next bytes following the move.

Usually, the BDOS expects MOVE to transfer data within the currently selected bank or common memory. However, if the BDOS calls the XMOVE entry point before calling MOVE, the MOVE routine must perform an interbank transfer.

BIOS Function 27: SELMEM Select Memory Bank Entry Parameters: A=Memory Bank

Returned Values; None

The SELMEM entry point is only present in banked systems. The banked version of the CP/M 3 BDOS calls SELMEM to select the current memory bank for further instruction execution or buffer references. You must preserve or restore all registers other than the accumulator, A, upon exit.

BIOS Function 28:SETBNKSpecify Bank for DMA OperationEntry Parameters:A=Memory BankReturned Values:None

SETBNK only occurs in the banked version of CP/M 3. SETBNK specifies the bank that the subsequent disk READ or WRITE routine must use for memory transfers. The BDOS always makes a call to SETBNK to identify the DMA bank before performing a READ or WRITE call. Note that the BDOS does not reference banks other than 0 or 1 unless another bank is specified by the BANK field of a Data Buffer Control Block (BCB).

BIOS Function 29: XMOVE

Set Banks for Following MOVE

Entry Parameters: B=destination bank C=source bank

Returned Values: None

XMOVE is provided for banked systems that support memory-to- memory DMA transfers over the entire extended address range. Systems with this feature can have their data buffers located in an alternate bank instead of in common memory, as is usually required. An XMOVE call affects only the following MOVE call. All subsequent MOVE calls apply to the memory selected by the latest call to SELMEM. After a call to the XMOVE function, the following call to the MOVE function is not more than 128 bytes of data. If you do not implement XMOVE, the first instruction must be a RET instruction.

3.4.5 Clock Support Function

This section defines the clock support function TIME.

BIOS Function 26: TIME Get and Set Time Entry Parameters: C=Time Get/Set Flag Returned values: None

The BDOS calls the TIME function to indicate to the BIOS whether it has just set the Time and Date fields in the SCB, or whether the BDOS is about to get the Time and Date from the SCB. On entry to the TIME function, a zero in register C indicates that the BIOS should update the Time and Date fields in the SCB. A OFFH in register C indicates that the BDOS has just set the Time and Date in the SCB and the BIOS should update its clock. Upon exit, you must restore register pairs HL and DE to their entry values.

This entry point is for systems that must interrogate the clock to determine the time. Systems in which the clock is capable of generating an interrupt should use an interrupt service routine to set the Time and Date fields on a regular basis.

3.5 Banking Considerations

This section discusses considerations for separating your BIOS into resident and banked modules. You can place part of your customized BIOS in common memory, and part of it in Bank 0. However, the following data structures and routines must remain in common memory:

- o the BIOS stack
- o the BIOS jump vector
- o Disk Parameter Blocks
- o memory management routines
- o the CHRTBL data structure
- o all character I/O routines
- o portions of the disk I/O routines

3.5 Banking Considerations

You can place portions of the disk I/O routines in the system bank, Bank 0. In a banked environment, if the disk I/O hardware supports DMA transfers to and from banks other than the currently selected bank, the disk I/O drivers can reside in Bank 0. If the system has a DMA controller that supports block moves from memory to memory between banks, CP/M 3 also allows you to place the blocking and deblocking buffers in any bank other than Bank 1, instead of common memory.

If your disk controller supports data transfers only into the currently selected bank, then the code that initiates and performs a data transfer must reside in common memory. In this case, the disk I/O transfer routines must select the DMA bank, perform the transfer, then reselect Bank 0. The routine in common memory performs the following procedure:

- 1) Selects the DMA bank that SETBNK saved.
- 2) Performs physical I/O.
- 3) Reselects Bank 0.
- 4) Returns to the calling READ or WRITE routine in Bank 0.

Note that Bank 0 is in context (selected) when the BDOS calls the system initialization functions BOOT and DRVTBL; the disk I/O routines HOME, SELDSK, SETTRK, SETSEC, SETDMA, READ, WRITE, SECTRN, MULTIO, and FLUSH; and the memory management routines KMOVE and SETBNK.

Bank 0 or Bank 1 is in context when the BDOS calls the system initialization routines WBOOT, DEVTBL, and DEVINI; the character I/O routines CONST, CONIN, CONOUT, LIST, AUXOUT, AUXIN, LISTST, CONOST, AUXIST, and AUXOST, the memory select and move routines MOVE and SELMEM, and the clock support routine TIME.

You can place a portion of the character I/O routines in Bank 0 if you place the following procedure in common memory.

- 1) Swap stacks to a local stack in common.
- 2) Save the current bank.
- 3) Select Bank 0.
- 4) Call the appropriate character I/O routine.
- 5) Reselect the saved bank.
- 6) Restore the stack.

3.6 Assembling and Linking Your BIOS

This section assumes you have developed a BIOS3. ASM or BNKBIOS3. ASM file appropriate to your specific hardware environment. Use the Digital Research Relocatable Macro Assembler RMAC to assemble the BIOS. Use the Digital Research Linker LINK-8 OTM to create the BIOS3. SPR and BNKBIOS3. SPR files. The SPR files are part of the input to the GENCPM program.

In a banked environment, your CP/M 3 BIOS can consist of two segments: a banked segment and a common segment. This allows you to minimize common memory usage to maximize the size of the TPA. To prepare a banked BIOS, place code and data that must reside in common in the CSEG segment, and code and data that can reside in the system bank in the DSEG segment. When you link the BIOS, LINK-80 creates the BNKBIOS3.SPR file with all the CSEG code and data first, then the DSEG code and data.

After assembling the BIOS with RMAC, link your BNKBIOS using LINK-80 with the [B] option. The [B] option aligns the DSEG on a page boundary, and places the length of the CSEG into the BNKBIOS3.SPR header page.

Use the following procedure to prepare a BIOS3.SPR or BNKBIOS3.SPR file from your customized BIOS.

1) Assemble your BIOS3.ASM or BNKBIOS3.ASM file with the relocatable assembler RMAC.COM to produce a relocatable file of type REL. Assemble SCB.ASM to produce the relocatable file SCB.REL.

Assembling the Nonbanked BIOS:

A>RMAC BIOS3

Assembling the Banked BIOS:

A>RMAC BNKBIOS3

2) Link the BIOS3 REL or BNKBIOS3 REL file and the SCB REL file with LINK-80 to produce the BIOS3 SPR or BNKBIOS3 SPR file. The [OS] option with LINK causes the output of a System Page Relocatable (SPR) file.

Linking the Nonbanked BIOS:

A>LINK BIOS3[OS]=BIOS3,SCB

Linking the Banked BIOS:

A>LINK BNKBIOS3[B]=BNKBIOS3 SCB

The preceding examples show command lines for linking a banked and nonbanked BIOS. In these examples, the BIOS3 REL and BNKBIOS3 REL are the files of your assembled BIOS. SCB.REL contains the definitions of the System Control Block variables. The [B] option implies the [OS] option.

End of Section 3

Section 4

CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules

This section discusses the modular organization of the example CP/M 3 BIOS on your distribution disk. For previous CP/M operating systems, it was necessary to generate all input/output drivers from a single assembler source file. Such a file is difficult to maintain when the BIOS supports several peripherals. As a result, Digital Research is distributing the BIOS for CP/M 3 in several small modules.

The organization of the BIOS into separate modules allows you to write or modify any I/O driver independently of the other modules. For example, you can easily add another disk I/O driver for a new controller with minimum impact on the other parts of the BIOS.

4.1 Functional Sumary of BIOS Modules

The modules of the BIOS are BIOSKRNL.ASM, SCB.ASM, BOOT.ASM, MOVE.ASM, CHARIO.ASM, DRVTBL.ASM, and a disk I/O module for each supported disk controller in the configuration.

BIOSKRNL.ASM is the kernel, root, or supervisor module of the BIOS. The SCB.ASM module contains references to locations in the System Control Block. You can customize the other modules to support any hardware configuration. To customize your system, add or modify external modules other than the kernel and the SCE.ASM module.

Digital Research supplies the BIOSKRNL.ASM module. This module is the fixed, invariant portion of the BIOS, aid the interface from the BDOS to all BIOS functions. It is supplied in source form for reference only, and you should not modify it except for the equate statement described in the following paragraph.

You must be sure the equate statement (banked equ true) at the start of the BIOSKRNL.ASM source file is correct for your system configuration. Digital Research distributes the BIOSKRNL.ASM file for a banked system. If you are creating a BIOS for a nonbanked system, change the equate statement to the following:

banked equ false

and reassemble with RMAC. This is the only change you should make to the BIOSKRNL.ASM file.

Table 4-1 summarizes the modules in the CP/M 3 BIOS.

Table 4-1. CP/M 3 BIOS Module Function Summary

Module Function

BIOSKRNL.ASM

Performs basic system initialization, and dispatches character and disk I/O.

SCB.ASM module

Contains the public definitions of the various fields in the System Control Block. The BIOS can reference the public variables.

BOOT.ASM module

Performs system initialization other than character and disk I/O. BOOT loads the CCP for cold starts and reloads it for warm starts. CHARIO.ASM module

Performs all character device initialization, input, output, and status polling. CHARIO contains the character device characteristics table.

DRVTBL.ASM module

Points to the data structures for each configured disk drive. The drive table determines which physical disk unit is associated with which logical drive. The data structure for each disk drive is called an Extended Disk Parameter Header (XDPH).

Disk I/O modules

Initialize disk controllers and execute READ and WRITE code for disk controllers. You must provide an XDPH for each supported unit, and a separate disk I/O module for each controller in the system. To add another disk controller for which a prewritten module exists, add its XDPH names to the DRVTBL and link in the new module.

Table 4-1. (continued)

Module Function

MOVE.ASM module

Performs memory-to-memory moves and bank selects.

4.2 Conventions Used in BIOS Modules

The Digital Research RMAC relocating assembler and LINK-80 linkage editor allow a module to reference a symbol contained in another module by name. This is called an external reference. The Microsoft relocatable object module format that RMAC and LINK use allows six-character names for externally defined symbols. External names must be declared PUBLIC in the module in which they are defined. The external names must be declared EXTRN in any modules that reference them.

The modular BIOS defines a number of external names for specific purposes. Some of these are defined as public in the root module, BIOSKRNL.ASM. Others are declared external in the root and must be defined by the system implementor. Section 4.4 contains a table summarizing all predefined external symbols used by the modular BIOS.

External names can refer to either code or data. All predefined external names in the modular BIOS prefixed with a @ character refer to data items. All external names prefixed with a ? character refer to a code label. To prevent conflicts with future extensions, user-defined external names should not contain these characters.

4.3 Interactions of Modules

The root module of the BIOS, BIOSKRNL.ASM, handles all BDOS calls, performs interfacing functions, and simplifies the individual modules you need to create.

4.3.1 Initial Boot

BIOSKRNL.ASM initializes all configured devices in the following order:

- 1) BIOSKRNL calls ?CINIT in the CHARIO module for each of the 16 character devices and initializes the devices.
- 2) BIOSKRNL invokes the INIT entry point of each XDPH in the FD1797SD module.

- 3)BIOSKRNL calls the ?INIT entry of the BOOT module to initialize other system hardware, such as memory controllers, interrupts, and clocks. It prints a sign-on message specific to the system, if desired.
- 4) BIOSKRNL calls ?LDCCP in the BOOT module to load the CCP into the TPA.
- 5) The BIOSKRNL module sets up Page Zero of the TPA with the appropriate jump vectors, and passes control to the CCP.

4.3.2 Character I/O Operation

The CHARIO module performs all physical character I/O. This module contains both the character device table (@CTBL) and the routines for character input, output, initialization, and status polling. The character device table, @CTBL, contains the ASCII name of each device, mode information, and the current baud rate of serial devices.

To support logical to physical redirection of character devices, CP/M 3 supplies a 16-bit assignment vector for each logical device. The bits in these vectors correspond to the physical devices. The character I/O interface routines in BIOSKRNL handle all device assignment, calling the appropriate character I/O routines with the correct device number. The BIOSKRNL module also handles XON/XOFF processing on output devices where it is enabled.

You can use the DEVICE utility to assign several physical devices to a logical device. The BIOSKRNL root module polls the assigned physical devices, and either reads a character from the first ready input device that is selected, or sends the character to all of the selected output devices as they become ready.

4.3.3 Disk I/O Operation

The BIOSKRNL module handles all BIOS calls associated with disk I/O. It initializes global variables with the parameters for each operation, then invokes the READ or WRITE routine for a particular controller. The SELDSK routine in the BIOSKRNL calls the LOGIN routine for a controller when the BDOS initiates a drive login. This allows disk density or media type to be automatically determined.

The DRVTBL module contains the sixteen-word drive table, @DTBL. The order of the entries in @DTBL determines the logical to physical drive assignment. Each word in @DTBL contains the address of a DPH, which is part of an XDPH, as shown in Table 4-10. The word contains a zero if the drive does not exist. The XDPH contains the addresses of the INIT, LOGIN, READ, and WRITE entry points of the I/O driver for a particular controller. When the actual drivers are called, globally accessible variables contain the various parameters of the operation, such as the track and sector.

4.4 Predefined Variables and Subroutines

The modules of the BIOS define public variables which other modules can reference. Table 4-2 contains a summary of each public symbol and the module that defines it.

Defined

		Defined
Symbol	Function and Use	in Module
@ADRV	Byte, Absolute drive code	BIOSKRNL
@CBNK	Byte, Current CPU bank	BIOSKRNL
@CNT	Byte, Multisector count	BIOSKRNL
@CTBL	Table, Character device table	CHARIO
@DBNK	Byte, Bank for disk I/O	BIOSKRNL
@DMA	Word, DMA address	BIOSKRNL
@DTBL	Table, Drive table	DRVTBL
@RDRV	Byte, Relative drive code (UNIT)	BIOSKRNL
@SECT	Word, Sector address	BIOSKRNL
@TRK	Word, Track number	BIOSKRNL
?BANK	Bank select	MOVE
?Ci	Character device input	CHARIO
?CINIT	Character device initialization	CHARIO
?CIST	Character device input status	CHARIO
?CO	Character device output	CHARIO
?COST	Character device output status	CHARIO
?INIT	General initialization	BOOT
?LDCCP	Load CCP for cold start	BOOT
?MOVE	Move memory to memory	MOVE
?PDEC	Print decimal number	BIOSKRNL
?PDERR	Print BIOS disk error header	BIOSKRNL
?PMSG	Print message	BIOSKRNL
?RLCCP	Reload CCP for warm start	BOOT
?XMOVE	Set banks for extended move	MOVE
?TIME	Set or Get time	BOOT

Table 4-2. Public Symbols in CP/M 3 BIOS

The System Control Block defines public variables that other modules can reference. The System Control Block variables @CIVEC, @COVEC, @AIVEC, @AOVEC, and @LOVEC are referenced by BIOSKR,-NL.ASM. The variable @BNKBF can be used by ?LDCCP and ?RLCCP to implement interbank block moves. The public variable names @ERMDE, @FX, @RESEL, @VINFO, @CRDSK, @USRCD, and @CRDf4A are used for error routines which intercept BDOS errors. The publics @DATE, @HOUR, @MIN, and @SEC can be updated by an interrupt-driven real-time clock. @MXTPA contains the current BDOS entry point.

Disk I/O operation parameters are passed in the following global variables, as shown in Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Global Variables in BIOSKRNL.ASM

Variable	Meaning
@ADRV	Byte; contains the absolute drive code (0 through F for A through P) that CP/M is referencing for READ and WRITE operations. The SELDSK routine in the BIOSKRNL module obtains this value from the BDOS and places it in @DRV. The absolute drive code is used to print error messages.
@RDRV This i	Byte; contains the relative drive code for READ and WRITE operations. The relative drive code is the UNIT number of the controller in a given disk I/O module. BIOSKRNL obtains the unit number from the XDPH. s the actual drive code a driver should send to the controller.
@TRK	Word; contains the starting track for READ and WRITE.
@SECT	Word; contains the starting sector for READ and WRITE.
@DMA	Word; contains the starting disk transfer address.
@DBNK	Byte; contains the bank of the DMA buffer.
@CNT	Byte; contains the physical sector count for the operations that follow.
@CBNK	Byte; contains the current bank for code execution.

Several utility subroutines are defined in the BIOSKRNL ASM module, as shown in Table

4-4.

Table 4-4. Public Utility Subroutines in BIOSKRNL.ASK

- utility I meaning
- ?PMSG Print string starting at <HL>, stop at null (0).
- PDEC Print binary number in decimal from HL.
- ?PDERRPrint disk error message header using current disk parameters:
<CR><LF>BIOS Error on d:, T- nn, S-nn.

All BIOS entry points in the jump vector are declared as public for general reference by other BIOS modules, as shown in Table 4-5.

Table 4-5. Public Names in the BIOS Jump Vector

Public Name	Function
?BOOT	Cold boot entry
?WBOOT	Warm boot entry
?CONST	Console input status
?CONIN	Console input
?CONO	Console output
?LIST	List output
?AUXO	Auxiliary output
?AUXI	Auxiliary input
?HOME	Home disk drive
?SLDSK	Select disk drive
?ST12RK	Set track
?STSEC	Set sector
?STDMA	Set DMA address
?READ	Read record
?WRITE	Write record
?LISTS	List status
?SCTRN	Translate sector
?CONOS	Console output status
?AUXIS	Auxiliary input status
?AUXOS	Auxiliary output status
?DVTBL	Return character device table address
?DEVIN	Initialize character device
?DRTBL	Return disk drive table address
?MLTIO	Set multiple sector count
?FLUSH	Flush deblocking buffers (not implemented)
?MOV	Move memory block
?TIM	Signal set or get time from clock
?BNKSL	Set bank for further execution
?STBNK	Set bank for DMA
?XMOV	Set banks for next move

4.5 BOOT Module

The BOOT module performs general system initialization, and loads and reloads the CCP. Table 4-6 shows the entry points of the BOOT module.

Table 4-6. BOOT Module Entry Points

Module	Meaning
?INIT	The BIOSKRNL module calls ?INIT during cold start to perform hardware initialization other than character and disk I/O. Typically, this hardware can include time-of-day clocks, interrupt systems, and special I/O ports used for bank selection.
?LDCCP	BIOSKRNL calls ?LDCCP during cold start to load the CCP into the TPA. The CCP can be loaded either from the system tracks of the boot device or from a file, at the discretion of the system implementor. In a banked system, you can place a copy of the CCP in a reserved area of another bank to increase the performance of the ?RLCCP routine.
?RLCCP	BIOSKRNL calls ?RLCCP during warm start to reload the CCP into the TPA. In a banked system, the CCP can be copied from an alternate bank to eliminate any disk access. Otherwise, the CCP should be loaded from either the system tracks of the boot device or from a file.

4.6 Character I/O

The CHARIO module handles all character device interfacing. The CHARIO module contains the character device definition table @CTBL, the character input routine ?CI, the character output routine ?CO, the character input status routine ?CIST, the character output status routine ?COST, and the character device initialization routine ?CINIT.

The BIOS root module, BIOSKRNL ASM, handles all character I/O redirection. This module determines the appropriate devices to perform operations and executes the actual operation by calling ?CI, ?CO, ?CIST, and ?COST with the proper device number(s).

@CTBL is the external name for the structure CHRTBL described in Section 3 of this manual. @CTBL contains an 8-byte entry for each physical device def-ined by this BIOS. The table is terminated by a zero byte after the last entry.

The first field of the character device table, @CTBL, is the 6- byte device name. This device name should be all upper-case, left-justified, and padded with ASCII spaces (20H).

The second field of @CTBL is 1 byte containing bits that Indicate the type of device and its current mode, as shown in Table 4-7.

Table 4-7. Mode Bits

Mode Bits	Meaning
00000001 00000010	Input device (such as a keyboard) output device (such as a printer)
00000011	Input/output device (such as a terminal or modem) Device has software-selectable baud
00001000 00010000	rates Device may use XON protocol XON/XOFF protocol enabled

The third field of @CTBL is 1 byte and contains the current baud rate for serial devices. The high-order nibble of this field is reserved for future use and should be set to zero. The low-order four bits contain the current baud rate as shown in Table 4-8. Many systems do not support all of these baud rates.

Table 4-8. Baud	Rates for Serial Devices		
Decimal	Binary	Baud Rate	
0	0000	none	
1	0001	50	
2	0010	75	
3	0011	110	
4	010 0	134.5	
5	0101	150	
6	0110	300	
7	0111	600	
8	1000	1200	
9	1001	1800	
10	1010	2400	
11	1011	3600	
12	1100	4800	
13	1101	7200	
14	1110	9600	
15	1111	19200	

Table 4-9 shows the entry points to the routines in the CHARIO module. The BIOSKRNL module calls these routines to perform machine-dependent character I/O.

Table 4-9. Character Device Labels

Label Meaning

?Ci Character Device Input

?CI is called with a device number in register B. It should wait for the next available input character, then return the character in register A. The character should be in 8-bit ASCII with no parity.

?CO Character Device Output

?CO is called with a device number in register B and a character in register C. It should wait until the device is ready to accept another character and then send the character. The character is in 8-bit ASCII with no parity.

?CIST Character Device Input Status

?CIST is called with a device number in register B. It should return with register A set to zero if the device specified has no input character ready; and should return with A set to 0FFH if the device specified has an input character ready to be read.

?COST Character Device Output Status

?COST is called with a device number in register B. It should return with register A set to zero if the device specified cannot accept a character immediately, and should return with A set to 0FFH if the device is ready to accept a character.

?CINIT Character Device Initialization

?CINIT is called for each of the 16 character devices, and initializes the devices. Register C contains the device number. The ?CINIT routine initializes the physical character device specified in register C to the baud rate contained in the appropriate entry of the CHRTBL. You only need to supply this routine if I/O redirection has been implemented. It is referenced only by the DEVICE utility supplied with CP/M 3.

4.7 Disk I/O

The separation of the disk I/O section of the BIOS into several modules allows you to support each particular disk controller independently from the rest of the system. A manufacturer can supply the code for a controller in object module form, and you can link it into any existing modular BIOS to function with other controllers in the system.

The data structure called the Extended Disk Parameter Header, or XDPH, contains all the necessary information about a disk drive. BIOSKRNL.ASM locates the XDPH for a particular logical drive using the Drive Table. The XDPH contains the addresses of the READ, WRITE, initialization, and login routines. The XDPH also contains the relative unit number of the drive on the controller, the current media type, and the Disk Parameter Header (DPH) that the BDOS requires. Section 3 of this manual describes the Disk Parameter Header.

The code to read and write from a particular drive is independent of the actual CP/M logical drive assignment, and works with the relative unit number of the drive on the controller. The position of the XDPH entry in the DRVTBL determines the actual CP/M 3 drive code.

4.7.1 Disk I/O Structure

The BIOS requires a DRVTBL module to locate the disk driver. it also requires a disk module for each controller that is supported.

The drive table module, DRVTBL, contains the addresses of each XDPH defined in the system. Each XDPH referenced in the DRVTBL must be declared external to link the table with the actual disk modules.

The XDPHs are the only public entry points in the disk I/O modules. The root module references the XDPHs to locate the actual I/O driver code to perform sector READS and WRITES. When the READ and WRITE routines are called, the parameters controlling the READ or WRITE operation are contained in a series of global variables that are declared public in the root module.

4.7.2 Drive Table Module (DRVTBL)

The drive table module, DRVTBL, defines the CP/M absolute drive codes associated with the physical disks.

The DRVTBL module contains one public label, @DTBL. @DTBL is a 16-word table containing the addresses of up to 16 XDPH'S. Each XDPH name must be declared external in the DRVTBL. The first entry corresponds to drive A, and the last to drive P. You must set an entry to 0 if the corresponding drive is undefined. Selecting an undefined drive causes a BDOS SELECT error.

4.7.3 Extended Disk Parameter Headers (XDPHS)

An Extended Disk Parameter Header (XDPH) consists of a prefix and a regular Disk Parameter Header as described in Section 3. The label of a XDPH references the start of the DPH. The fields of the prefix are located at relative offsets from the XDPH label.

The XDPHs for each unit of a controller are the only entry points in a particular disk drive module. They contain both the DPH for the drive and the addresses of the various action routines for that drive, including READ, WRITE, and initialization. Figure 4-1 shows the format of the Extended Disk Parameter Header.

ADDRESS	LOW BYTE 0	HIGH BYTE 8	15	
XDPH-10	addr of sec	addr of sector WRITE		
XDPH-8	addr of sec	tor READ		
XDPH-6	addr of dr	ive LOGIN		
XDPH-4	addr of c	Irive INIT		
XDPH-2	unit	type		
XDPH+0	addr of trar	nslate table		start of regular DPH
XDPH+2	0	0		
XDPH+4	0	0		
XDPH+6	0	0		
XDPH+8	0	0		
XDPH+10	Media Flag	0		
XDPH+12	addr of DPB			
XDPH+14	addr of CSV			
XDPH+16	addr of ALV			
XDPH+18	addr of DIRBCB			
XDPH+20	addr of DTABCB			
XDPH+22	addr of HASH			
XDPH+24	hash bank			

Figure 4-1. XDPH Format

Table 4-10 describes the fields of each Extended Disk Parameter Header.

Table 4-10. Fields of Each XDPH

Field Meaning

- WRITE The WRITE word contains the address of the sector WRITE routine for the drive.
- READ The READ word contains the address of the sector READ routine for the drive.
- LOGIN The LOGIN word contains the address of the LOGIN routine for the drive.
- INIT The INIT word contains the address of the first-time initialization code for the drive.
- UNIT The UNIT byte contains the drive code relative to the disk controller. This is the value placed in @RDRV prior to calling the READ, WRITE, and LOGIN entry points of the drive.
- TYPE The TYPE byte is unused by the BIOS root, and is reserved for the driver to keep the current density or media type to support multiple-format disk subsystems.
- regular DPH The remaining fields of the XDPH comprise a standard DPH, as discussed in Section 3 of this manual.

4.7.4 Subroutine Entry Points

The pointers contained in the XDPH reference the actual code entry points to a disk driver module. These routines are not declared public. Only the XDPH itself is public. The BIOS root references the XDPHs only through the @DTBL. Table 4-11 shows the BIOS subroutine entry points.

Table 4-11. Subroutine Entry Points

Entry Point meaning

WRITE When the WRITE routine is called, the address of the XDPH is passed in registers DE. The parameters for the WRITE operation are contained in the public variables @ADRV, @RDRV, @TRK, @SECT, @DMA, and @DBNK. The WRITE routine should return an error code in register A. The code 00 means a successful operation, 01 means a permanent error occurred, and 02 means the drive is write-protected if that feature is supported.

- READ When the READ routine is called, the address of the XDPH is contained in registers DE. The parameters for the READ operation are contained in the public variables @ADRV, @RDRV, @TRK, @SECT, @DMA, and @DBNK. The READ routine should return an error code in register A. A code of 00 means a successful operation and 01 means a permanent error occurred.
- LOGIN The LOGIN routine is called before the BDOS logs into the drive, and allows the automatic determination of density. The LOGIN routine can alter the various parameters in the DPH, including the translate table address (TRANS) and the Disk Parameter Block (DPB). The LOGIN routine can also set the TYPE byte. On single media type systems, the LOGIN routine can simply return. When LOGIN is called, the registers DE point to the XDPH for this drive.
- INIT The BOOT entry of the BIOSKRNL module calls each INIT routine during cold start and prior to any other disk accesses. INIT can perform any necessary hardware initialization, such as setting up the controller and interrupt vectors, if any.

4.7.5 Error Handling and Recovery

The READ and WRITE routines should perform several retries of an operation that produces an error. If the error is related to a seek operation or a record not found condition, the retry routine can home or restore the drive, and then seek the correct track. The exact sequence of events is hardware-dependent.

When a nonrecoverable error occurst the READ or WRITE routines can print an error message informing the operator of the details of the error. The BIOSKRNL module supplies a subroutine, ?PDERR, to print a standard BIOS error message header. This routine prints the following message:

BIOS Err on D: T-nn S-nn

The D: is the selected drive, and T-nn and S-nn display the track and sector number for the operation. The READ and WRITE routines should print the exact cause of the error after this message, such as Not Ready, or Write Protect. The driver can then ask the operator if additional retries are desired, and return an error code to the BDOS if they are not.

However, if the @ERMDE byte in the System Control Block indicates the BDOS is returning error codes to the application program without printing error messages, the BIOS should simply return an error without any message.

4.7.6 Multiple Sector I/O

The root module global variable @CNT contains the multisector count. Refer to Sections 2.5 and 3.4.3 for a discussion of the considerations regarding multirecord I/O.

4.8 MOVE Module

The MOVE Module performs memory-to-memory block moves and controls bank selection. The ?MOVE and ?XMOVE entry points correspond directly to the MOVE and XMOVE jump vector routines documented in Section 3. Table 4-12 shows the entry points for the MOVE module.

CP/M 3 Sytem Guide 4.8 MOVE Module

Table 4-12. Move Module Entry Points

Entry Point Meaning

?MOVE Memory-to-memory move

?MOVE is called with the source address for the move in register DE, the destination address in register HL, and the byte count in register BC. If ?XMOVE has been called since the last call to ?MOVE, an interbank move must be performed. On return, registers HL and DE must point to the next bytes after the MOVE. This routine can use special DMA hardware for the interbank move capability, and can use the Z80 LDIR instruction for intrabank moves.

?XMOVE Set banks for one following ?MOVE

?XMOVE is called with the destination bank in register B and the source bank in register C. Interbank moves are only invoked if the DPHs specify deblocking buffers in alternate banks. ?XMOVE only applies to one call to ?MOVE. (Not implemented in the example.)

?BANK Set bank for execution

?BANK is called with the bank address in register A. This bank address has already been stored in @CBNK for future reference. All registers except A must be maintained upon return.

4.9 Linking Modules into the BIOS

The following lines are examples of typical link commands to build a modular BIOS ready for system generation with GENCPK:

LINK BNKBIOS3[b]=BNKBIOS, SCB, BOOT, CHARIO, MOVE, DRVTBL, <disk-modules>

LINK BIOS3[os]=BIOS,SCB,BOOT,CHARIO,MOVE,DRVTBL,<disk-modules>

End of Section 4

Section 5

System Generation

This section describes the use of the GENCPM utility to create a memory image CPM3.SYS file containing the elements of the CP/M 3 operating system. This section also describes customizing the LDRBIOS portion of the CPMLDR program, and the operation of CPMLDR to read the CPM3.SYS file into memory. Finally, this section describes the procedure to follow to boot CP/M 3.

In the nonbanked system, GENCPM creates the CPM3.SYS file from the BDOS3.SPR and your customized BIOS3.SPR files. In the banked system, GENCPM creates the CPM3. SYS f i le from the RESBDOS3. SPR f i le, the BNKBDOS3.SPR file, and your customized BNKBIOS3.SPR file.

If your BIOS contains a segment that can reside in banked memory, GENCPM separates the code and data in BNKBIOS3.SPR into a banked portion which resides in Bank 0 just below common memory, and a resident portion which resides in common memory.

GENCPM relocates the system modules, and can allocate physical record buffers, allocation vectors, checksum vectors, and hash tables as requested in the BIOS data structures. It also relocates references to the System Control Block, as described on page 27. GENCPM accepts its command input from a file, GENCPM.DAT, or interactively from the console.

5.1 GENCPM Utility

Syntax:

GENCPM [AUTO | AUTO DISPLAY}

Purpose:

GENCPM creates a memory image CPM3.SYS file, containing the CP/M 3 BDOS and customized BIOS. The GENCPM utility performs late resolution of intermodule references between system modules. GENCPM can accept its command input interactively from the console or from a file GENCPM.DAT.

In the nonbanked system, GENCPM creates a CPM3.SYS file from the BDOS3.SPR and BIOS3.SPR files. In the banked system, GENCPM creates the CPM3.SYS file from the RESBDOS3.SPR, the BNKBDOS3.SPR and the BNKBIOS3.SPR files. Remember to back up your CPM3.SYS file before executing GENCPM, because GENCPM deletes any existing CPM3.SYS file before it generates a new system.

Input Files:

Banked System Nonbanked System BNKBIOS3.SPR BIOS3.SPR RESBDOS3.SPR BDOS3.SPR BNKBDOS3.SPR

optionally GENCPM.DAT

Output File:

CPM3.SYS

optionally GENCPM.DAT

GENCpm determines the location of the system modules in memory and, optionally, the number of physical record buffers allocated to the system. GENCPM can specify the location of hash tables requested by the Disk Parameter Headers (DPHS) in the BIOS. GENCPM can allocate all required disk buffer space and create all the required Buffer Control Blocks (BCBs). GENCPM can also create checksum vectors and allocation vectors.

GENCPM can get its input from a file GENCPM.DAT. The values in the file replace the default values of GENCPM. If you enter the AUTO parameter in the command line GENCPM gets its input from the file GENCPM.DAT and generates a new system displaying only its sign-on and sign-off messages on the console. If AUTO is specified and a GENCPM.DAT file does not exist on the current drive, GENCPM reverts to manual generation.

If you enter the AUTO DISPLAY parameter in the command line, GENCPM automatically generates a new system and displays all questions on the console. If AUTO DISPLAY is specified and a GENCPM.DAT file does not exist on the current drive, GENCPM reverts to manual generation. If GENCPM is running in AUTO mode and an error occurs, it reverts to manual generation and starts from the beginning.

The GENCPM.DAT file is an ASCII file of variable names and their associated values. In the following discussion, a variable name in the GENCPM.DAT file is referred to as a Question Variable. A line in the GENCPM.DAT file takes the following general form:

Question Variable = value I ? I ?value <CR><LF>

value = #decimal value or hexadecimal value or drive letter (A - P) or Yes, No, Y, or N You can specify a default value by following a question mark with the appropriate value, for example ?A or ?25 or ?Y. The question mark tells GENCPM to stop and prompt the user for input, then continue automatically. At a ?value entry, GENCPM displays the default value and stops for verification.

The following pages display GENCPM questions. The items in parentheses are the default values. The Question Variable associated with the question is shown below the explanation of the answers to the questions.

Program Questions:

Use GENCPM.DAT for defaults (Y)? Enter Y - GENCPM gets its default values from the file GENCPM.DAT.

Enter N - GENCPM uses the built-in default values.

No Question Variable is associated with this question

Create a new GENCPM.DAT file (N) ? Enter N - GENCPM does not create a new GENCPM.DAT fil,

Enter Y - After GENCPM generates the new CPM3 SYS file it creates a new GENCPM.DAT file containing the default values.

Question Variable: CRDATAF

Display Load Table at Cold Boot (Y)?

Enter Y - On Cold Boot the system displays the load table containing the filename, filetype, hex starting address, length of system modules, and the TPA size.

Enter N - System displays only the TPA size on cold boot.

Question Variable: PRTMSG

Number of console columns (#80) ? Enter the number of columns (characters-per-line) for your console.

A character in the last column must not force a new line for console editing in CP/M 3. If your terminal forces a new line automatically, decrement the column count by one.

Question Variable: PAGWID

Number of lines per console page (#24)?

Enter the number of the lines per screen for your console.

Question Variable: PAGLEN

Backspace echoes erased character (N)?

Enter N - Backspace (Ctrl-H, 08H) moves back one column and erases the previous character.

Enter Y - Backspace moves forward one column and displays the previous character.

Question Variable: BACKSPC

Rubout echoes erased character (Y)?

Enter Y $\,$ - Rubout (7FH) moves forward one column and displays the previous character.

Enter N - Rubout moves back one column and erases the previous character.

Question Variable: RUBOUT

Initial default drive (A:)?

Enter the drive code the prompt is to display at cold boot.

Question Variable: BOOTDRV

Top page of memory (FF) ? Enter the page address that is to be the top of the operating system. OFFH is the top of a 64K system.

Question Variable: MEMTOP

Bank-switched memory (Y) ? Enter Y - GENCPM uses the banked system files.

Enter N - GENCPM uses the nonbanked system files.

Question Variable: BNKSWT

Common memory base page (CO) ?

This question is displayed only if you answered Y to the previous question. Enter the page address of the start of common memory.

Question Variable: COMBAS

Long error messages (Y)?

This question is displayed only if you answered Y to bank- switched memory.

Enter Y - CP/M 3 error messages contain the BDOS function number and the name of the file on which the operation was attempted.

Enter N - CP/M 3 error messages do not display the function number or file.

Question Variable: LERROR

Double allocation vectors (Y)?

This question is displayed only if you answered N to bank- switched memory. For more information about double allocation vectors, see the definition of the Disk Parameter Header ALV field in Section 3.

Enter Y - GENCPM creates double-bit allocation vectors for each drive.

Enter N - GENCPM creates single-bit allocation vectors for each drive.

Question Variable: DBLALV

Accept new system definition (Y)?

Enter Y GENCPM proceeds to the next set of questions.

Enter N GENCPM repeats the previous questions and displays your previous input in the default parentheses. You can modify your answers.

No Question Variable is associated with this question.

Number of memory segments (#3)?

GENCPM displays this question if you answered Y to bank- switched memory.

Enter the number of memory segments in the system. Do not count common memory or memory in Bank 1, the TPA bank, as a memory segment. A maximum of 16 (0 - 15) memory segments are allowed. The memory segments define to GENCPM the memory available for buffer and hash table allocation. Do not include the part of Bank 0 that is reserved for the operating system.

Question Variable: NUMSEGS

CP/M 3 Base, size, bank (8E, 32,00)

Enter memory segment table: Base, size, bank (00,8E,00) ? Base, size, bank (00,CO,02) ? Base, size, bank (00,CO,03) ?

Enter the base page, the length, and the bank of the memory segment.

Question Variable: MEMSEGO# where 0 to F hex

Accept new memory segment table entries (Y)?

Enter Y GENCPM displays the next group of questions.

Enter N GENCPM displays the memory segment table definition questions again.

No Question Variable is associated with this question.

Setting up directory hash tables:

Enable hashing for drive d: (Y)

GENCPM displays this question if there is a Drive Table and if the DPHs for a given drive have an OFFFEH in the hash table address field of the DPH. The question is asked for every drive d: defined in the BIOS.

Enter Y - Space is allocated for the Hash Table. The address and bank of the Hash Table is entered into the DPH.

Enter N - No space is allocated for a Hash Table for that drive.

Question Variable: HASHDRVD where d = drives A-P.

Setting up Blocking/Deblocking buffers:

GENCPM displays the next set of questions if either or both the DTABCB field or the DIRBCB field contain OFFFEH.

Number of directory buffers for drive d: (#l) ? 10

This question appears only if you are generating a banked system. Enter the number of directory buffers to allocate for the specified drive. In a banked system, directory buffers are allocated only inside Bank 0. In a nonbanked system, one directory buffer is allocated above the BIOS.

Question Variable: NDIRRECD where d = drives A-P.

5.1 The GENCPM Utility

Number of data buffers for drive d: (#l) ? 1

This question appears only if you are generating a Banked system. Enter the number of data buffers to allocate for the specified drive. In a banked system, data buffers can only be allocated outside Bank 1, and in common. You can only allocate data buffers in alternate banks if your BIOS supports interbank moves. In a nonbanked system, data buffers are allocated above the BIOS.

Question Variable: NDTARECD where d = drives A-P.

Share buffer(s) with which drive (A:)?

This question appears only if you answered zero to either of the above questions. Enter the drive letter (A-P) of the drive with which you want this drive to share a buffer.

Question Variable: ODIRDRVD for directory records where d = drives A-P.

Question Variable: ODTADRVD for data records where d drives A-P.

Allocate buffers outside of Commom (N)?

This question appears if the BIOS XMOVE routine is implemented.

Answer Y - GENCPM allocates data buffers outside of common and Bank 0.

Answer N - GENCPM allocates data buffers in common.

Question Variable: ALTBNKSD where d = drives A-P.

Overlay Directory buffer for drive d: (Y)?

This question appears only if you are generating a nonbanked system.

Enter Y this drive shares a directory buffer with another drive.

Enter N GENCPM allocates an additional directory buffer above the BIOS.

Question Variable: OVLYDIRD where d = drives A-P.

Overlay Data buffer for drive d: (Y)?

This question appears only if you are generating a nonbanked system.

Enter Y - this drive shares a data buffer with another drive.

Enter N - GENCPM allocates an additional data buffer above the BIOS.

Question Variable: OVLYDTAD for directory records where d = drives A-P.

Accept new buffer definitions (Y)?

Enter Y GENCPM creates the CPM3 SYS file and terminates.

Enter N GENCPM redisplays all of the buffer definition questions.

No Question Variable is associated with this question.

Examples:

The following section contains examples of two system generation sessions. If no entry follows a program question, assume RETURN was entered to select the default value in parentheses. Entries different from the default appear after the question mark.

EXAMPLE OF CONTENTS OF GENCPM DAT FILE

```
combas = c0 <CR>
lerror = ? <CR>
numsegs 3 <CR>
memseg00 00,80,00 <CR>
memseg01 0d,b3,02 <CR>
memseg0f ?00,c0,10 <CR>
hashdrva y <CR>
hashdrva n <CR>
ndirreca 20 <CR>
ndtarecf 10 <CR>
```

EXAMPLE OF SYSTEM GENERATION WITH BANKED MEMORY

A>GENCPM

CP/M 3.0 System Generation Copyright (C) 1982, Digital Research

Default entries are shown in (parens). Default base is Hex, precede entry with # for decimal

Use GENCPM.DAT for defaults (Y)? Create a new GENCPM.DAT file (N)? Display Load Map at Cold Boot (Y)? Number of console columns (#80)? Number of lines in console page (#24)? Backspace echoes erased character (N)? Rubout echoes erased character (N)? Initial default drive (A:)? Top page of memory (FF)? Bank switched memory (Y)? Common memory base page (CO)? Long error messages (Y)? Accept new system definition (Y)? Setting up Allocation vector for drive A: Setting up Checksum vector for drive A: Setting up Allocation vector for drive B: Setting up Checksum vector for drive B: Setting up Allocation vector for drive C: Setting up Checksum vector for drive C: Setting up Allocation vector for drive D: Setting up Checksum vector for drive D: *** Bank 1 and Common are not included *** * * * *** in the memory segment table. Number of memory segments (#3)? CP/M 3 Base, size, bank (8B, 35, 00) Enter memory segment table: Base, size, bank (00,8B,00) ? Base, size, bank (OD, B3, 02) ? Base, size, bank (00, CO, 03) ? CP/M 3 Sys SBOOH 3500H Bank 00 Memseg No. 00 OOOOH BBOOH Bank 00 Memseg No. 01 ODOOH B300H Bank 02 Memseg No. 02 OOOOH COOOH Bank 03 Accept new memory segment table entries (Y)? Setting up directory hash tables: Enable hashing for drive A: (Y)? Enable hashing for drive B: (Y)? Enable hashing for drive C: (Y)? Enable hashing for drive D: (Y)?

Setting up Blocking/Deblocking buffers: The physical record size is 0200H: Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F4H, Bank 0 = 00BBH, Other banks = 0166H Number of directory buffers for drive A: (#32)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F4H, Bank 0 = 0049H, Other banks = 0166HNumber of data buffers for drive A: (#2)? Allocate buffers outside of Common (N)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F0H, Bank 0 = 0049H, Other banks = 0166HNumber of directory buffers for drive B; (#32)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F0H, Bank 0 = 0007H, Other banks = 0166HNumber of data buffers for drive B: (#0)? Share buffer(s) with which drive (A:)? The physical record size is 0080H: Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F0H, Bank 0 = 0007H, Other banks = 0166HNumber of directory buffers for drive C: (410)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F0H, Bank 0 = 0001H, Other banks = 0166HNumber of directory buffers for drive D: (#0) ? Share buffer(s) with which drive (C:)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00F0H, Bank 0 = 0001H, Other banks = 0166HAccept new buffer definitions (Y)? BNKBIOS3 SPR F600H 0600H BNKBIOS3 SPR BI00H 0F00H RESBDOS3 SPR F000H 0600H BNKBDOS3 SPR 8700H 2A00H

*** CP/M 3.0 SYSTEM GENERATION DONE

In the preceding example GENCPM displays the resident portion of BNKBIOS3.SPR first, followed by the banked portion.

EXAMPLE OF SYSTEM GENERATION WITH NONBANKED MEMORY

A>GENCPM CP/M 3.0 System Generation Copyright (C) 1982, Digital Research Default entries are shown in (parens). Default base is Hex, precede entry with for decimal Use GENCPM DAT for defaults (Y)? Create a new GENCPM.DAT file (N)? Display Load Map at Cold Boot (Y)? Number of console columns (#80)? Number of lines in console page (#24)? Backspace echoes erased character (N) ? Rubout echoes erased character (N)? Initial default drive (A:)? Top page of memory (FF)? Bank switched memory (Y)? N Double allocation vectors (Y)? Accept new system definition (Y)? Setting up Blocking/Deblocking buffers: The physical record size is 0200H: Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D8HDirectory buffer required and allocated for drive A: Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D5HOverlay Data buffer for drive A: (Y)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D5HOverlay Directory buffer for drive B: (Y)? Share buffer(s) with which drive (A:)? Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D5H

Overlay Data buffer for drive B: (Y) ? Share buffer(s) with which drive (A:) ?

The physical record size is 00B0H:

Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 0005H

Overlay Directory buffer for drive C: (Y) ? Share buffer(s) with which drive (A:) ?

Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D5H

> Overlay Directory buffer for drive D: (Y) ? Share buffer(s) with which drive (C;) ?

Available space in 256 byte pages: TPA = 00D5H

Accept new buffer definitions (Y)?

BIOS3SPR F300H 0B00HBDOS3SPR D600H 1D00H

*** CP/M 3.0 SYSTEM GENERATION DONE

A>

5.2 Customizing the CPMLDR

The CPMLDR resides on the system tracks of a CP/M 3 system disk, and loads the CPM3.SYS file into memory to cold start the system. CPMLDR contains the LDRBDOS supplied by Digital Research, and must contain your customized LDRBIOS.

The system tracks for CP/M 3 contain the customized Cold Start Loader, CPMLDR with the customized LDRBIOS, and possibly the CCP.

The COPYSYS utility places the Cold Start Loader, the CPMLDR, and optionally the CCP on the system tracks, as shown in Table 5-1.

Track	Sector	Page	Memory Address	CP/M 3 Module Name
00 00	01 02	00	Boot Address 0100H	Cold Start Loader CPMLDR
•				and
00 00	21 22	09 10	0A80H 0B00H	LDRBDOS LDRBIOS
00 01	26 01	12 12	0D00H 0D80H	and
01	26	25	1A00H	ССР

 Table 5-1.
 Sample CP/M 3 System Track Organization

Typically the Cold Start Loader is loaded into memory from Track 0, Sector 1 of the system tracks when the reset button is depressed. The Cold Start Loader then loads CPMLDR from the system tracks into memory.

Alternatively, if you are starting from an existing CP/M 2 system, you can run CPMLDR.COM as a transient program. CP/M 2 loads CPMLDR.COM into memory at location 100H. CPMLDR then reads the CPM3.SYS file from User 0 on drive A and loads it into memory.

Use the following procedure to create a customized CPMLDR.COM file, including your customized LDRBIOS:

1) Prepare a LDRBIOS.ASM file.

2) Assemble the LDRBIOS file with RMAC to produce a LDRBIOS REL file.

3) Link the supplied CPMLDR.REL file with the LDRBIOS.REL file you created to produce a CPMLDR.COM file.

A>LINK CPf4LDR[LlOO]=CPNLDR,LDRBIOS

Replace the address 100 with the load address to which your boot loader loads CPMLDR.COM. You must include a bias of 100H bytes for buffer space when you determine the load address.

The CPMLDR requires a customized LDRBIOS to perform disk input and console output. The LDRBIOS is essentially a nonbanked BIOS. The LDRBIOS has the same JMP vector as the regular CP/M 3 BIOS. The LDRBIOS is called only to perform disk reads (READ) from one drive, console output (CONOUT) for sign-on messages, and minimal system initialization.

The CPMLDR calls the BOOT entry point at the beginning of the LDRBIOS to allow it to perform any necessary hardware initialization. The BOOT entry point should return to CPMLDR instead of loading and branching to the CCP, as a BIOS normally does. Note that interrupts are not disabled when the LDRBIOS BOOT routine is called.

Test your LDRBIOS completely to ensure that it properly performs console character output and disk reads. Check that the proper tracks and sectors are addressed on all reads and that data is transferred to the proper memory locations.

You should assemble the LDRBIOS.ASM file with a relocatable origin of 0000H. Assemble the LDRBIOS with RMAC to produce a LDRBIOS.REL file. Link the LDRBIOS.REL file with the CPMLDR.REL file supplied by Digital Research to create a CPMLDR.COM .file. Use the L option in LINK to specify the load origin (address) to which the boot loader on track 0 sector 1 loads the CPMLDR.COM file.

Unnecessary BIOS functions can be deleted from the LDRBIOS to conserve space. There is one absolute restriction on the length of the LDRBIOS; it cannot extend above the base of the banked portion of CP/M 3. (GENCPM lists the base address of CP/M 3 in its load map.) If you plan to boot CP/M 3 from standard, single-density, eight-inch floppy disks, your CPMLDR must not be longer than 1980H to place the CPMLDR.COM file on two system tracks with the boot sector. If the CCP resides on the system tracks with the Cold Start Loader and CPMLDR, the combined lengths must not exceed 1980H.

5.3 CPKLDR Utility

Syntax:

CPMLDR

Purpose:

CPMLDR loads the CP/M 3 system file CPM3.SYS into Bank 0 and transfers control to the BOOT routine in the customized BIOS. You can specify in GENCPM for CPMLDR to display a load table containing the names and addresses of the system modules.

The CPM3.SYS file contains the CP/M 3 BDOS and customized BIOS. The file CPM3.SYS must be on drive A in USER 0. You can execute CPMLDR under SID or DDT to help debug the BIOS. A \$B in the default File Control Block (FCB) causes CPMLDR to execute a RST 7 (SID breakpoint) just before jumping to the CP/M 3 Cold Boot BIOS entry point. Input File:

CPM3.SYS

Examples:

A>CPMLDR CP/M V3.0 Loader Copyright (C) 1982, Digital Research

BNKBIOS3SPR F600H 0A00HBNKBIOS3SPR BB00H 0500HRESBDOS3SPR F100H 0500HBNKBDOS3SPR 9A00H 2100H

60K TPA A>

In the preceding example, CPMLDR displays its name and version number, the Digital Research copyright message, and a four-column load table containing the filename, filetype, hex starting address, and length of the system modules. CPMLDR completes its sign-on message by indicating the size of the Transient Program Area (TPA) in kilobytes. The CCP then displays the system prompt, A>.

5.4 Booting CP/M 3

The CP/M 3 cold start operation loads the CCP, BDOS, and BIOS modules into their proper locations in memory and passes control to the cold start entry point (BIOS Function 0: BOOT) in the BIOS. Typically, a PROM-based loader initiates a cold start by loading sector 0 on track I of the system tracks into memory and jumping to it. This first sector contains the Cold Start Loader. The Cold Start Loader loads the CPMLDR.COM program into memory and jumps to it. CPMLDR loads the CPM3.SYS file into memory and jumps to the +BIOS cold start entry point.

To boot the CP/M 3 system, use the following procedure:

- 1) Create the CPM3.SYS file.
- 2) Copy the CPM3 SYS file to the boot drive.
- 3) Create a CPMLDR.COM for your machine.
- 4) Place the CPMLDR.COM file on your system tracks using SYSGEN with CP/M 2 or COPYSYS with CP/M 3. The boot loader must place the CPMLDR.Com file at the address at which it originated. If CPMLDR has been linked to load at 100H, you can run CPMLDR under CP/M 2.

The COPYSYS utility handles initialization of the system tracks. The source of COPYSYS is included with the standard CP/M 3 system because you need to customize COPYSYS to support nonstandard system disk formats. COPYSYS copies the Cold Start Loader, the CPMLDR.COM file, and optionally the CCP to the system tracks. Refer to the COPYSYS.ASM source file on the distribution disk.

End of Section 5

Section 6

Debugging the BIOS

This section describes a sample debugging session for a nonbanked CP/M 3 BIOS. You must create and debug your nonbanked system first, then bring up the banked system. Note that your system probably displays addresses that differ from the addresses in the following example.

You can use SID, Digital Research's Symbolic Debugger Program, running under CP/M 2.2, to help debug your customized BIOS. The following steps outline a sample debugging session.

 Determine the amount of memory available to CP/M 3 when the debugger and CP/M 2.2 are in memory. To do this, load the debugger under CP/M 2.2 and list the jump instruction at location 0005H. In the following example of a 64K system, C500 is the base address of the debugger, and also the maximum top of memory that you can specify in GENCPM for your customized CP/M 3 system.

A>SID CP/M 3 SID - Version 3.0 #L5 0005 JMP C500

2) Running under CP/M 2.2, use GENCPM to generate a CPM3.SYS file, which specifies a top of memory that is less than the base address of the debugger, as determined by the previous step. Allow at least 256K bytes for a patch area. In this example, you can specify C3 to GENCPM as the top of memory for your CP/M 3 system.

A>GENCPM

.

Top page of memory (FF)? C3

3) Now you have created a system small enough to debug under SID. Use SID to load the CPMLDR.COM file, as shown in the

following example:

A>SID CP14LDR.COM CP/M 3 SID - Version 3.0 NEXT MSZE PC END 0E80 0EB0 0100 D4FF

4) Use the I command in SID, as shown in the next example, to place the characters \$B into locations 005DH and 005EH of the default FCB based at 005CH. The \$B causes CPMLDR.COM to break after loading the CPM3.SYS file into memory.

#I\$B

5) Transfer control to CPMLDR using the G command:

#G

At this point, the screen clears and the following information appears:

CP/M V3.0 LOADER Copyright (c) 1982, Digital Research

BIOS3SPR AA00 0B00BDOS3SPR 8B00 1F00

34K TPA

01A9

6) With the CP/M 3 system in the proper location, you can set passpoints in your BIOS. Use the L command with the address specified as the beginning of the BIOS by the CPMLDR load table as shown in step 5 above. This L command causes SID to display the BIOS jump vector which begins at that address. The jump vector indicates the beginning address of each subroutine in the table. For example, the first jump instruction in the example below is to the Cold Boot subroutine.

#LAA00

The output from your BIOS might look like this:

JMP AA68 JMP AA8E JMP ABA4 JMP ABAF JMP ABCA

7) Now set a passpoint in the Cold BOOT routine. Use the P command with an address to set a passpoint at that address.

#PAA68

8) Continue with the CPMLDR.COM program by entering the G command, followed by the address of Cold Boot, the first entry in the BIOS jump vector.

#GAA00

- 9) In response to the G command, the CPMLDR transfers control to the CP/M 3 operating system. If you set a passpoint in the Cold BOOT routine, the program stops executing, control transfers to SID, and you can begin tracing the BOOT routine.
- 10) When you know the BOOT routine is functioning correctly, enter passpoints for the other routines you want to trace, and begin tracing step by step to determine the location of problems.

Refer to the Digital Research Symbolic Instruction Debugger User's Guide (SID) in the Programmer's Utilities Guide for the CP/M Family of Operating Systems for a discussion of all the SID commands.

End of Section 6

Appendix A

Removable Media Considerations

All disk drives under CP/M 3 are classified as either permanent or removable. In general, removable drives support media changes; permanent drives do not. Setting the high-order bit in the CKS field in a drive's Disk Parameter Block (DPB) marks the drive as a permanent drive.

The BDOS file system distinguishes between permanent and removable drives. If a drive is permanent, the BDOS always accepts the contents of physical record buffers as valid. In addition, it also accepts the results of hash table searches on the drive.

On removable drives, the status of physical record buffers is more complicated. Because of the potential for media change, the BDOS must discard directory buffers before performing most directory related BDOS function calls. This is required because the BDOS detects media changes by reading directory records. When it reads a directory record, the BDOS computes a checksum for the record, and compares the checksum to the currently stored value in the drive's checksum vector. If the checksum values do not match, the BDOS assumes the media has changed. Thus, the BDOS can only detect a media change by an actual directory READ operation.

A similar situation occurs with directory hashing on removable drives. Because the directory hash table is a memory-resident table, the BDOS must verify all unsuccessful hash table searches on removable drives by accessing the directory.

The net result of these actions is that there is a significant performance penalty associated with removable drives as compared to permanent drives. In addition, the protection provided by classifying a drive as removable is not total. Media changes are only detected during directory operations. If the media is changed on a drive during BDOS WRITE operations, the new disk can be damaged.

The BIOS media flag facility gives you another option for supporting drives with removable media. However, to use this option, the disk controller must be capable of generating an interrupt when the drive door is opened. If your hardware provides this support, you can improve the handling of removable media by implementing the following procedure:

1) Mark the drive as a permanent drive and set the DPB CKS parameter to th'e total number of directory entries, divided by four. For example, set the CKS field for a disk with 96 directory entries to 8018H.

A Removable Media Considerations

2) Implement an interrupt service routine that sets the @MEDIA flag in the System Control Block and the DPH MEDIA byte for the drive that signaled the door open condition.

By using the media flag facility, you gain the performance advantage associated with permanent drives on drives that support removable media. The BDOS checks the System Control Block @MEDIA flag on entry for all disk-related function calls. If the flag has not been set, it implies that no disks on the system have been changed. If the flag is set, the BDOS checks the DPH MEDIA flag of each currently logged-in disk. If the DPH MEDIA flag of a drive is set, the BDOS reads the entire directory on the drive to determine whether the drive has had a media change before performing any other operations on the drive. In addition, it temporarily classifies any permanent disk with the DPH MEDIA flag set as a removable drive. Thus, the BDOS discards all directory physical record buffers when a drive door is opened to force all directory READ operations to access the disk.

To summarize, using the BIOS MEDIA flag with removable drives offers two important benefits. First, because a removable drive can be classified as permanent, performance is enhanced. Second, because the BDOS immediately checks the entire directory before performing any disk-related function an the drive if the drive's DPH MEDIA flag is set, disk integrity is enhanced.

End of Appendix A

Apendix **B**

Auto-density Support

AUto-density support refers to the capability of CP/M 3 to support different types of media on a single drive. For example, some floppy-disk drives accept single-sided and double-sided disks in both single-density and double-density formats. Auto-density support requires that the BIOS be able to determine the current density when SELDSK is called and to subsequently be able to detect a change in disk format when the READ or WRITE routines are called.

To support multiple disk formats, the drivers BIOS driver must include a Disk Parameter Block (DPB) for each type of disk or include code to generate the proper DPB parameters dynamically. In addition, the BIOS driver must determine the proper format of the disk when the SELDSK entry point is called with register E bit 0 equal to 0 (initial SELDSK calls). If the BIOS driver cannot determine the format, it can return OOOOH in register pair HL to indicate the select was not successful. Otherwise, it must update the Disk Parameter Header (DPH) to address a DPB that describes the current media, and return the address of the DPH to the BDOS.

Note: all subsequent SELDSK calls with register E bit 0 equal to 1, the BIOS driver must continue to return the address of the DPH returned in the initial SELDSK call. The value 0000H is only a legal return value for initial SELDSK calls.

After a driver's SELDSK routine has determined the format of a disk, the driver's READ and WRITE routines assume this is the correct format until an error is detected. If an error is detected and the driver determines that the media has been changed to another format, it must return the value OFFH in register A and set the media flag in the System Control Block. This signals the BDOS that the media has changed and the next BIOS call to the drive will be an initial SELDSK call. Do not modify the drivers DPH or DPB until the initial SELDSK call is made. Note that the BDOS can detect a change in media and will make an initial SELDSK call, even though the BIOS READ and WRITE routines have not detected a disk format change. However, the SELDSK routine must always determine the format on initial calls.

A drive's Disk Parameter Header (DPH) has associated with it several uninitialized data areas: the allocation vector, the checksum vector, the directory hash table, and physical record buffers. The size of these areas is determined by DPB parameters. If space for these areas is explicitly allocated in the BIOS, the DPB that requires the most space determines the amount of memory to allocate. If the BIOS defers the allocation of these areas to GENCPM, the DPH must be initialized to the DPB with the largest space requirements. If one DPB is not largest in all of the above categories, a false one must be constructed so that GENCPM allocates sufficient space for each data area.

End of Appendix B

Appendix C

Modifing a CP/M 2 BIOS

If you are modifying an existing CP/M 2.2 BIOS, you must note the following changes.

o The BIOS jump vector is expanded from 17 entry points in CP/M 2.2 to 33 entry points in CP/M 3. You must implement the necessary additional routines.

o The Disk Parameter Header and Disk Parameter Block data structures are expanded.

See Section 3 of this manual, "CP/M 3 BIOS Functional Specifications," for details of the BIOS data structures and subroutines. The following table shows all CP/M 3 BIOS functions with the changes necessary to support CP/M 3.

Table C-1. CP/M 3 BIOS Functions

Function Meaning

BIOS Function 00: BOOT

The address for the JMP at location 5 must be obtained from @MXTPA in the System Control Block.

BIOS Function 01: WBOOT

The address for the JMP at location 5 must be obtained from @MXTPA in the System Control Block. The CCP can be reloaded from a file.

BIOS Function 02: CONST

Can be implemented unchanged.

BIOS Function 03: CONIN

Can be implemented unchanged. Do not mask the high-order bit.

Table C-1. (continued)

Function Meaning

BIOS Function 04: CONOUT

Can be implemented unchanged.

BIOS Function 05: LIST

Can be implemented unchanged.

BIOS Function 06: AUXOUT

Called PUNCH in CP/M 2. Can be implemented unchanged.

BIOS Function 07: AUXIN

Called READER in CP/M 2. Can be implemented unchanged. Do not mask the high-order bit.

BIOS Function 08: HOME

No change.

BIOS Function 09: SELDSK

Can not return a select error when SELDSK is called with bit 0 in register E equal to 1.

BIOS Function 10: SETTRK

No change.

BIOS Function 11: SETSEC

Sectors are physical sectors, not logical 128-byte sectors.

BIOS Function 12: SETDMA

Now called for every READ or WRITE operation. The DMA buffer can now be greater than 128 bytes.

Table C-1. (continued)Functionmeaning

BIOS Function 13: READ

READ operations are in terms of physical sectors. READ can return a 0FFH error code if it detects that the disk format has changed.

BIOS Function 14: WRITE

WRITE operations are in terms of physical sectors. If write detects that the disk is Read-Only, it can return error code 2. WRITE can return a 0FFH error code if it detects that the disk format has changed.

BIOS Function 15: LISTST

Can be implemented unchanged.

BIOS Function 16: SECTRN

Sectors are physical sectors, not logical 128-byte sectors.

The following is a list of new BIOS functions:

BIOS Function 17: CONOST

- BIOS Function 18: AUXIST
- BIOS Function 19: AUXOST
- BIOS Function 20: DEVTBL
- BIOS Function 21: DEVINI
- BIOS Function 22; DRVTBL
- BIOS Function 23: MULTIO
- BIOS Function 24: FLUSH
- BIOS Function 25: MOVE
- BIOS Function 26: TIME

CP/M 3 System Guide BIOS Function 27: SELMEM BIOS Function 28: SETBNK BIOS Function 29: XMOVE BIOS Function 30: USERF BIOS Function 31: RESERV1 BIOS Function 32: RESERV2

End of Appendix C

Appendix D CPM3.SYS File Format

Table D-1. CPH3.SYS File Format

Record	Contents
0	Header Record (128 bytes)
1	Print Record (128 bytes)
2-n	CP/M 3 operating system in reverse order, top down.

Table D-2. Header Record Definition

Byte	Contents
0	Top page plus one, at which the resident
	portion of CP/M 3 is to be loaded top down.
1	Length in pages (256 bytes) of the resident
	portion of CP/M 3.
2	Top page plus one, at which the banked portion
	of CP/M 3 is to be loaded top down.
3	Length in pages (256 bytes) of the banked
	portion of CP/M 3.
4-5	Address of CP/M 3 Cold Boot entry point.
6-15	Reserved.
16-51	Copyright Message.
52	Reserved.
53-58	Serial Number.
59-127	Reserved.

The Print Record is the CP/M 3 Load Table in ASCII, terminated by a dollar sign (\$).

End of Appendix D

Appendix E Root Module of Relocatable BIOS for CP/M 3

All the listings in Appendixes E through I are assembled with , the cP/M Relocating Macro Assembler, and cross-referenced XREF , an assembly language cross-reference program used with . listings are output from the XREF program. The assembly sources are on your distribution disk as ASM files.

<pre>2 3 4 5 FFFF = true equ -l 6 0000 = false equ not true 7 8 FFFF = banked equ true 9 10 11 ; Copyright (C), 1982 12 ; Digital Research, Inc 13 ; P.O. Box 579 14 ; Pacific Grove, CA 93950 15 16 17 ; This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is 18 ; distributed as source for informational purposes only. 19 ; All desired modifications should be performed by 20 ; adding or changing externally defined modules. 21 ; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that </pre>
45FFFF=trueequ -l6 0000 =falseequ not true78FFFF=bankedequ true910:Copyright (C), 198212:Digital Research, Inc13:P.O. Box 57914:Pacific Grove, CA 9395015-16-17:the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18:distributed as source for informational purposes only.19:All desired modifications should be performed by20:adding or changing externally defined modules.21:This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
5FFFF=trueequ -l6 0000 =falseequ not true78FFFF=bankedequ true910:Copyright (C), 198212:Digital Research, Inc13:P.O. Box 57914:Pacific Grove, CA 939501516:-17:the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18:distributed as source for informational purposes only.19:All desired modifications should be performed by20:adding or changing externally defined modules.21:This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
60000=falseequ not true78FFFF=bankedequ true9101011Copyright (C), 1982121314P.O. Box 57914Pacific Grove, CA 939501516171819202121
78FFFF =banked equ true910;Copyright (C), 198211;Digital Research, Inc12;Digital Research, Inc13;P.O. Box 57914;Pacific Grove, CA 9395015.16.17;This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18;distributed as source for informational purposes only.19;All desired modifications should be performed by20;adding or changing externally defined modules.21;This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
91011; Copyright (C), 198212; Digital Research, Inc13; P.O. Box 57914; Pacific Grove, CA 93950151617; This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18; distributed as source for informational purposes only.19; All desired modifications should be performed by20; adding or changing externally defined modules.21; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
1011;12;13;14;151617;18;18;19;20;21;21;10111213141515161718191910101011111213141515161717181919101010111112131415151617181919101010111111121314151516171819191910101011101111121314151516171819191910101010
11;Copyright (C), 198212;Digital Research, Inc13;P.O. Box 57914;Pacific Grove, CA 9395015
12;Digital Research, Inc13;P.O. Box 57914;Pacific Grove, CA 9395015
13;P.O. Box 57914;Pacific Grove, CA 9395015
14;Pacific Grove, CA 9395015
151617; This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18; distributed as source for informational purposes only.19; All desired modifications should be performed by20; adding or changing externally defined modules.21; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
1617; This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is18; distributed as source for informational purposes only.19; All desired modifications should be performed by20; adding or changing externally defined modules.21; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
 17 ; This is the invariant portion of the modular BIOS and is 18 ; distributed as source for informational purposes only. 19 ; All desired modifications should be performed by 20 ; adding or changing externally defined modules. 21 ; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
18;distributed as source for informational purposes only.19;All desired modifications should be performed by20;adding or changing externally defined modules.21;This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
19;All desired modifications should be performed by20;adding or changing externally defined modules.21;This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
20;adding or changing externally defined modules.21;This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
21 ; This allows producing "standard" I/O modules that
22 ; can be combined to support a particular system
23 ; configuration.
24
25 000d = cr equ 13
26 000A = 1f equ 10
27 0007 = bell equ 7
28 0011 = ctlQ equ'Q'-'@'
29 $0013 = \text{ctlS} \text{equ}'\text{S'-'}@'$
30
31 0100 = ccp equ 0100h ; CCP gets loaded the TPA
32
33 cseg ; GENCPM puts CSEG stuff in common memory
34
35 26
36 ; variables in system data page37
38 extrn @covec,@civec,@aovec.@aivec,@lovec ; I/O redirection vectors
39 extrn @mxtpa ; addr of system entry point
40 extrn @bnkbf ; 128 byte scratch buffer
41
42 ; initialization
43
44 extrn ?init ; general initialization and signon
45 extrn ?ldccp,?rlccp ; load & reload CCP for BOOT & WBOOT
46

47		; user defined character I/O routines
48		
49 50		extrn 7ci,?co,?cist,?cost ; each take device in
50		extrn ?cinlt ; (re)initialize device in <c></c>
51 52		extrn @ctbl ; physical character device table
52 53		dick communication data itams
55 54		; disk communication data items
54 55		extrn @dtbl ; table of pointers to XDPHs
55 56		public @adrv,@rdrv,@trk,@sect ; parameters for disk I/O
50 57		public @dma,@dbnk,@cnt ; " "
58		puene e unia, e uciai, e uni
59		; memory control
60		,,,
61		public @cbnk ; current bank
62		extrn ?xmove,?move ; select move bank, and block move
63		extrn ?bank ; select CPU bank
64		
65		; clock support
66		
67		extrn ?time ; siqnal time operation
68		
69		; general utility routines
70		
71		public ?pmsg,?pdec ; print message, print number from 0 to 65535
72		public ?pderr ; print BIOS disk error message header
73		
74		maclib modebaud ; define mode bits
75		
76		
77		; External names for BIOS entry points
78		
79		public ??boot,?wboot,?const,?conin,?cono,?list,?auxo,?auxi
80		public ?home,?sldsk,?sttrk ,?stsec,?stdma,7read,?write
81		public ?lists,?sctrn
82		public ?conos,?auxis,?auxos,?dvtbl,?devin,?drtbl
83		public 7mltio,?flush,?mov,7tim,?bnksl,7stbnk,?xmov
84		
85		
86		; BIOS Jump vector
87		
58		'All BIOS routines are invoked by calling these
89		; entry points.
90		
91	0000	C30000 ?boot: jmp boot ; initial entry on cold start
92 92	0003	C36C00 ?wboot. jmp wboot ; reentry on program exit, warm start
93 04	0001	
94 05	0006	C37701 ?const. jmp const ; return console input Status
95 06	0009	C39201 ?conin: jmp conin ; return console input character
96 07	000C	C30A00 ?cono: jmp conout ; send console output character
97 08	000F	C3E600 ?list: jmp list ; send list output character
98 00	0012	C3E000 ?auxo: jmp auxout ; send auxilliary output character
99 100	0015	C39801 ?auxi: jmp auxin ; return auxilliary input character
100	0010	C2/E00 themes improve here a second distance in the
101	0018	C36E00 ?home: jmp home ; met disks to logical home

102 001B C33F00 ?sldsk: jmp seldek ; select disk drive, return disk parm info 103 001E C37100 ?sttrk: jmp settrk : Set disk track 104 0021 ; set disk sector C37700 ?stsec: jmp setsec 105 0024 C37000 ?stdma: jmp setdma ; set disk I/O memory address 106 0027 C39400 ?read: jmp read ; read physical block(s) 107 002A C3AA00?write: jmp write ; write physical block(s) 108 109 002d C31201 ?lists: listat ; return list device Status jmp ; translate logical to physical sector 110 0030 C38900 ?sctrn: jmp sectrn 111 112 0033 C30601 ?conos: jmp conost ; return console output status 113 0036 C37D01 ?auxis: jmp ; return aux input status auxibt 114 0039 C30C01 ?auxoS: jmp auxost ; return aux output status 115 003C ; return address of device def table C3d200 ?dvtbl: jmp devtbl 116 003F C30000 ?devin: jmp ?cinit ; change baud rate of device 117 118 0042 C30600 ?drtbl: jmp getdrv ; return address of disk drive table 119 0045 C3CB00?mltio: imp multio ; Set multiple record count for disk I/O 120 0048 C3CF00 ?flush: jmp flush ; flush BIOS maintained disk caching 121 122 004B C30000 ?mov: ?move ; block move memory to memory jmp 123 004E C30000 ?tim: ?time ; Signal Time and date operation jmp 124 0051 bnksel ; select bank for code execution and DMA C32502 ?bnksl: jmp 125 setbnk : select different bank for disk I/O DMA 0054 C38500 ?stbnk: jmp 126 0057 C30000 ?xmov:jmp ?xmove; set source and destination banks for one 127 128 005a C30000 jmp 0 ; reserved for system implementor 129 C30000 jmp 0050 0 ; reserved for future expansion 130 0060 C30000 jmp 0 ; reserved for future expansion 131 132 133 ; BOOT 134 Initial entry point for SyStem startup. 135 136 ; this part can be banked dseg 137 138 boot: 139 0000 310200 lxi sp,boot\$stack 140 0003 0E0F mvi c,15 ; initialize all 16 character devices 141 c\$init\$loop: 142 0005 C5CD0000C1 push b ! call ?cinit ! pop b 143 000A 0dF20500 c ! jp c\$init\$loop dcr 144 145 000E CD0000 call ?init ; perform any additional system initialization 146 ; and print signon message 147 148 0011 0100102100 lxi b,16*256+0 ! lxi h,@dtbl ; Init all 16 logical disk drives 149 d\$init\$loop: 150 0017 C5 ; save remaining count and abs drive push b 151 ; grab @drv entry 0018 5E235623 mov e,m ! inx h ! mov d,m ! inx b 152 00IC 7BB2CA3600 mov a,e ! ora d ! jz d\$init\$next ; if null, no drive 153 0021 E5 push h ; save @drv pointer 154 0022 ; XDPH address in <HL> EB xchg 155 0023 2B2B7E32EE dcx h ! dcx h ! mov a,m ! sta @RDRV ; get relative drive code 156 0029 7932ED00 mov a,c ! sta @ADRV ; get absolute drive code 157 002D 2Bdcx h ; point to init pointer

1.50				
158	002E	562B5E mov d,	m ! dcx h ! mov e,	; get init pointer
159	0031	EBCDB6D1	xchg ! call ipchl	•
160	0035	El	• •	; recover @drv pointer
161		d\$init\$ne		,ī
162	0036	C1		; recover counter and drive #
163	0037	0C05C21700		d\$init\$loop; and loop for each drive
165	003C	C36300 jmp bo	•	dominiop ; and loop for each arrive
165	0050	C50500 Jiip 00	οτφι	
166			0000	; following in resident memory
167			cseg	, tonowing in resident memory
167		boot\$1:		
	0062		aall aa4¢:	
169	0063	CD7800	call set\$jumps	fet l CCD for first time
170	0066	CD0000	call ?ldccp	; fetch CCP for first time
171	0069	C30001	jmp ccp	
172				
173				
174		; WBC		
175		; E	Entry for system rest	tarts.
176				
177		wboot:		
178	006C	31D200	lxi sp,boot\$stack	
179	006F	CD7800	call set\$jumps	; initialize page zero
180	0072	CD0000	call ?rlccp	; reload CCP
181	0075	C30001	jmp ccp	; then reset jmp vectors and exit to ccp
182			JITT	,
183				
184		set\$jump	e•	
185		setøjump		
185		if bank	ad	
180	0078	3E01CDS100		kal
	0078		mvi a,1 ! call ?bn	K51
188		ndif		
189	007D	25.02	· D.O	
190	007D	3EC3	mvi a,JMP	
191	007F	3200003205	sta 0 ! sta 5	; met up jumps in page zero
192	0085	2103002201		d I ; BIOS warm start entry
193	0085	2A00002206	lhld @MXTPA !	shid 6 · BDOS system call entry
194	0091			shld 6 ; BDOS system call entry
105		C9	ret	sind 0 , BDOS system can entry
195		C9		sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
195 196		C9		sind 0 , BDOS system can entry
	0092	C9		sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
196		C9 = boot\$sta	ret ds 64	sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
196 197	0092		ret ds 64	sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
196 197 198 199	0092		ret ds 64	sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
196 197 198 199 200	0092	= boot\$sta	ret ds 64 ck equ \$	sind 6 , BDOS system can entry
196 197 198 199 200 201	0092	= boot\$sta ; DEV	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202	0092	= boot\$sta ; DEV	ret ds 64 ck equ \$	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203	0092	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl:	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ FBL Return address of ch	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205	0092	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl:	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ FBL Return address of ch	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV' ; F devtbl: 210000C9	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL Return address of ch lxi h,@ctbl ! ret	
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl: 210000C9 ; GETI	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL Return address of ch lxi h,@ctbl ! ret DRV	aracter device table
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl: 210000C9 ; GETI	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL Return address of ch lxi h,@ctbl ! ret	aracter device table
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl: 210000C9 ; GETI ; F	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL Return address of ch lxi h,@ctbl ! ret DRV	aracter device table
196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209	0092 00D2	= boot\$sta ; DEV ; F devtbl: 210000C9 ; GETI	ret ds 64 ck equ \$ TBL Return address of ch lxi h,@ctbl ! ret DRV	aracter device table

213			
213			
215			
215		; CONO	TIT
210		,	onsole Output. Send character in <c></c>
217		, , ,	to all selected devices
210		,	
219		conout;	
221			
222	00DA	2A0000	Ihld @covec ; fetch console output bit vector
223	00DD	C3E900	jmp out\$scan
224			
225			
226			; AUX0UT
227			; Auxiliary Output. Send character in <c></c>
228			: to all selected devices
229			
230		auxout	
231	00E0	2A0000	Ihld @aovec ; fetch aux output bit vector
232	00E3	C3K900	jmp out\$Scan
233			
234			
235			; LIST
236			; List Output. Send character in <c></c>
237			; to all selected devices.
238			
239	0.07	list:	
240	00E6	2A0000	Ihld @lovec ; fetch list output bit vector
241		. A	
242	0050	out\$sca	
243	00E9	0600	mvi b, ; Start with device 0
244	0050	co\$nex	
245	00EB	29 D2FE00 in a not	dad h ; shift out next bit
246	00EC	D2FF00 jnc not	
247 248	00EF 00F0	E5 C5	push h; save the vectorpush b; save the count and character
248 249	0010		push b ; save the count and character t\$ready:
249	00F1	CD2C0IB7CA	call coster ! ora a ! jz not\$out\$ready
250 251	00F8	CIC5	pop b ! puSh b ; restore and resave the character and device
252	00FA	CD0000	call ?co ; if device selected, print it
252	00FD	C1	pop b ; recover count and character
255	00FE	El	pop h ; recover count and character
255	001 E		t\$device:
255	00FF	04	inr b ; next device number
257	0100	7CBS	mov a,h ! ora 1 ; see if any devices left
258	0102	C2EB00	jnz co\$next ; and go find them
259	0105	C9	ret
260			
261			
262			; CONOST
263			; Console Output Status. Return true if
264			; all selected console output devices
265			; are ready.
266			
267		conost:	

268 269	0106 0109	2A0000 C31501	lhld @covec jmp ost\$scan	; get console output bit vector
270 271			5 1	
271 272			; AUXOST	
273				ary Output Status. Return true if
274				Il selected auxiliary output devices
275 276			; a	re ready.
270		auxost		
278	010C	2A0000		; get aux output bit vector
279	0I0F	C31501	jmp ost\$scan	
280				
281				
282			; LISTST	
283				utput Status. Return true if
284 285				l selected list output devices
285 286			, ar	e ready.
280		listst:		
288	0112	2A0000	lhld @lovec	; get list output bit vector
289				
290		ost\$sca	an:	
291	0115	0600	mvi b,0	; start with device 0
292		cos\$ne		
293	0117	29	dad h	; check next bit
294 295	0118 0119	E5 C5	push h	; save the vector
293 296	0119 0llA	3EFF	push b mvi a,0FFh	; save the count ; assume device ready
290 297	011C	DC2C01	cc coster	; check status for this device
298	011C	C1	pop b	; recover count
299	0120	El	pop h	; recover bit vector
300	0121	B7	ora a	; see if device ready
301	0122	C8	ťΖ	; if any not ready, return false
302	0123	05	dcr b	; drop device number
303	0124	7CB5	mov a,b! ora 1	; see if any more selected devices
304	0126	C21701	jnz cos\$next	all calculated means and day materians tanks
305 306	0129 012B	F6FF C9	ori 0FFh ret	; all selected were ready, return true
307	012D	09	Ict	
308		coster:		; check for output device ready. including optional
309				; xon/xorf support
310	012C	682600 mov	l,b ! mvi h,0	; make device code 16 bits
311	012F	E5	push h	; save it in stack
312	0130	292929 dad		i ; offset into device characteristics tbl
313	0133	11060019		l+6 ! dad d ; make address of mode byte
314 315	0137 013A	7EE610 mov El	a,m ! ani mb\$xc pop h	
315	013A 013B	CA0000	pop h jz ?cost	; recover console number in <hl> ; not a xon device, go get output status direct</hl>
317	013B 013E	11280219		ist ! dad d ; make pointer to proper xon/xoff flag
318	0132	CD5D01	call cisti	; see if this keyboard has character
319	0145	7EC46F01	mov a,m ! c	
320	0149	FEIIC2500I		nz not\$q; if its a ctl-Q,
321	014E	3EFF	mvi a,0FFh	; set the flag ready
322		not\$g:		

323 324	0150 0155	FE13C25701 3E00	cpi mvi	ctls ! jn a,00h	z not\$s ; if its a ctl-S, ; clear the flag
325		not\$s:			
326	0157	77	mov	m,a	; save the flag
327	0158	CD6601	call cos	stl	; get the actual output status,
328	0158	A6	ana	m	; and mask with ctl-Q/ctl-S flag
329	01SC	C9	ret		; return this am the status
330					
331		cistl:			; get input status with <bc> and <hl> saved</hl></bc>
332	01SD	CSES	push b	! push h	
333	015F	CD0000	call ?ci		
334	0162	ElCI	рор	h ! pop	b
335	0164	87	ora	a	
336	0165	C9	ret		
337	0105	e,	101		
338		costl			; get output status, saving <bc> & <hl></hl></bc>
339	0166	CSE5	nuch h	! push h	, get output status, saving (DC) & (IIL)
340	0168	CD0000	call ?cc		
					L.
341	0168	E1Cl	pop	h ! pop	D
342	016D	87	ora	а	
343	016E	C9	ret		
344					
345		cil:			. get input, saving <bc> & <hl></hl></bc>
346	016F	CSES		! push h	
347	0171	CD0000	call ?ci		
348	0174	ElC1	pop	h ! pop	b
349	0176	C9	ret		
250					
350					
350 351					
		; CONS	ST		
351		; CONS ;		sole Input	t Status. Return true if
351 352		; CONS ; ;	Cons		t Status. Return true if cted console input device
351 352 353		; CONS ; ; ;	Cons	any selec	
351 352 353 354		; CONS ; ; ;	Cons	any selec	cted console input device
351 352 353 354 355		; CONS ; ; ; const	Cons	any selec	cted console input device
351 352 353 354 355 356 357	0177	;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;	Cons	any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character.
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358		; ; ; 2A0000	Cons lhld @c	any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359	0177 017A	; ; ; const	Cons	any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360		; ; ; 2A0000	Cons lhld @c	any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001	Cons lhld @c jmp	any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362		; ; ; 2A0000	Cons lhld @c jmp ST	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001 ; AUXI ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367	017A	; ; ; 2A0000 C38001 ; AUXI ; ; ; auxist:	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character.
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368		; ; ; 2A0000 C38001 ; AUXI ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369	017A	; ; ; ; 2A0000 C38001 ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character.
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370	017A 017D	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi lhld @a	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371	017A	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av	cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character.
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372	017A 017D 0180	; ; ; 2A0000 C38001 ; AUXI ; ; ; ; auxist: 2A0000 ist\$scan: 0600 cis\$next:	Cons lhld @d jmp ST Auxi lhld @a mvi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av aivec b,0	<pre>cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector ; start with device 0</pre>
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373	017A 017D 0180 0182	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi lhld @a mvi dad	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av aivec b,0 h	<pre>cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector n ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector ; start with device 0 ; check next hit</pre>
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374	017A 017D 0180 0182 0183	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi lhld @a mvi dad mvi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av aivec b,0	<pre>cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector ; start with device 0 ; check next hit , assume device not ready</pre>
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375	017A 017D 0180 0182 0183 0185	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi lhld @a mvi dad mvi cc cistl	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av aivec b,0 h a,0	<pre>cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector ; start with device 0 ; check next hit , assume device not ready ; check status for this device</pre>
351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374	017A 017D 0180 0182 0183	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	Cons lhld @c jmp ST Auxi lhld @a mvi dad mvi	any selec has an av civec ist\$scar liary Inp any selec has an av aivec b,0 h	<pre>cted console input device vailable character. ; get console input hit vector ut Status. Return true if cted auxiliary input device vailable character. ; get aux input bit vector ; start with device 0 ; check next hit , assume device not ready</pre>

378	0188	7CB5	mov	a,h ! ora 1 ; see if any more selected devices
379	0180	C28201	jnz	cis\$next
380	0190	AF	xra	a ; all selected were not ready. return false
381	0191	C9	ret	
382				
383				
384		; CONI	N	
385		;	Cons	ole Input. Return character from first
386		;		ready console input device.
387				• •
388		conin:		
389	0192	2A0000 lhld @	Civec	
390	0195	C39B01 jmp	in\$scan	
391		jp		
392				
393		• ,	AUXIN	
394		, 1		ary Input. Return character from first
395		,		eady auxiliary input device.
396		,	1	eady auxiliary input device.
390 397		ouvin		
397 398	0100	auxin: 2A0000 lh	1d Quive	
	0198	2A0000 III	ld @aive	
399		·		
400	0100	in\$scar		1.1
401	0198	E5	push h	; save bit vector
402	019C	0600	mvi b,0	
403		ci\$next		
404	0191	29	dad h	; shift out next bit
405	019F	3100	mvi a,0	
406	0lAl	DC5D01	cc cisti	; see if the device has a character
407	01A4	B7	ora a	
408	01A5	C2B201	jnz ci\$r	dy ; this device has a character
409	01A8	05	dcr b	; else, next device
410	01A9	7CB5	mov a,h	1 ! ora 1 ; see if any more devices
411	01AB	C29E01 jnz ci\$	next ; g	to look at them
412	0IAE	El	pop h	; recover bit vector
413	01AF	C39B01	jmp in\$	scan ; loop til we find a character
414			5 1	
415		ci\$rdy:		
416	0152	El	pop h	; discard extra stack
417	0183	C30000	jmp ?ci	
418			JP	
419				
421		; U	tility Sub	routines
421		, C	unity Suc	noutines
422				
423		ipchl:		; vectored CALL point
423	01B6	-	nahl	, vectored CALL point
	0100	E9	pchl	
425				
426		9		
427		?pmsg:		; print message @ <hl> up to a null</hl>
428	0/5-			; saves <bc> & <de></de></bc>
429	01B7	C5	push b	
430	01B8	D5	push d	
431		pmsg\$l	-	
432	01B9	7EB7CAC801	mov a,r	n ! ora a ! jz pmsg\$exit

433	01BE	4FE5	mov c,a ! push h
434	01C0	CD0C00E1	call ?cono ! pop h
435	01C4	23C3B901	inx h ! jmp pmsg\$loop
436		pmsg\$e	
437	01C8	Dl	pop d
438	01C9	C1	pop h
439	0lCA	C9	ret
440			
441		?pdec:	; print binary number 0-65535 from <hl></hl>
442	0ICB	01F30111F0	lxi b,tablel0! lxi d,-10000
443		next:	
444	01D1	3E2F	mvi a, '0'-1
445		pdecl:	
446	01D1	E53Cl9D2DE	push h! inr a! dad d! jnc stoploop
44?	0109	3333C3D301	inx sp! inx sp! jmp pdecl
448		stoploo	
449	01DE	D5C5	push d! push b
450	01E0	4FCD0C00	mov c,a! call ?cono
451	01E4	C1D1	pop b! pop d
452		nextdig	
453	01E6	El	pop h
454	01E7	0ASF03	ldax b! mov e,a! inx b
455	OllA	0A5703	ldax b! mov d,a! inx b
456	01E0	7BB2C20101	mov a,e! ora d! jnz next
457	01F2	C9	ret
458			
459		tabel10):
460	01F3	18FC9CFFF6	dw -1000,-100,-10,-1,0
461			
462		?pderr:	
463	01FD	210100CD87	lxi h,drive\$msg ! call ?pmsg ; error header
464	0203	3AE000C641	lda @adrv ! adi 'A' ! mov c,a ! call ?cono ; drive code
469	020C	211300C0B7	lxi h,track\$msg ! call ?pmsg . track header
466	0212	2AEF00CDCB	lhld @trk ! call ?pdec ; track number
467	0218	211800C0B7	lxi h,sector\$msg ! call ?pmsg ; sector header
468	0211	2AFI00CDCB	lhld @sect ! call ?pdec ; sector number
469	0224	C9	ret
470			
471			
472		:	BNKSEL
473		;	Bank Select. Select CPU bank for further execution.
474			
475		bnksel	
476	0225 323E	802	sta @cbnk ; remember current bank
477	0228	C30000	jmp ?bank ; and go exit through users
478			; physical bank select routine
479			
480			
481	0228	FFFFFFFFFFFxc	offlist db -1,-1,-1,-1,-1,-1,-1 ; ctl-s clears to zero
482	0233	FFFFFFFFFF	db -1,-1,-1,-1,-1,-1,-1
483			
484			
485			
486			dseg ; following resides in banked memory
487			

488			
489		D: 1 1/	
490		; D1sk I/	O interface routines
491			
492			
493		; SELD	SK
494		; Se	elect Disk Drive. Drive code in <c>.</c>
495		:	Invoke login procedure for drive
496			if this is first select. Return
497		•	address of disk parameter header
		,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
498		;	in <hl></hl>
499			
500		seldsk:	
501	003F	7932ED00	mov a,c ! sta @adrv ; save drive select code
502	0043	69260029	mov l,c ! mvi h,0 ! dad h ; create index from drive code
503	0047	01000009	lxi h,@dtbl ! dad b ; get pointer to dispatch table
504	0045	7E23666F	mov a,m ! inx h ! mov h,m ! mov l,a ; point at disk descriptor
505	004F	54C8	ora h ! rz ; if no entry in table, no disk
506	0051	7BE601C26D	mov a,e ! ani 1 ! jnz not\$first\$select ; examine login bit
500	0057	E5EB	push h ! xchg ; put pointer in stack & <de></de>
508	0059	2IFEFF197E	lxi h,-2 ! dad d ! mov a,m ! sta @RDRV ; get relative drive
509	0061	2IFAFFI9	lxi h,-6 ! dad d ; find LOGIN addr
510	0065	7E23666F	mov a,m ! inx h ! mov h,m ! mov l,a ; get addr of LOGIN routine
511	0069	CDB601	call ipchl ; call LOGIN
512	006C	El	pop h ; recover DPH pointer
513		not\$first	§select:
514	006D	C9	ret
515			
515			
516		· HOM	E
516 517		; HOM	
516 517 518		,	E Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0).
516 517 518 519		; H	
516 517 518 519 520	00/5	; H home:	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0).
516 517 518 519 520 521	006E	; H	
516 517 518 519 520 521 522	006E	; H home:	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0).
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT	lome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc></bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527	006E	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ;	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc></bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528		; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk:	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations.</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529	0071	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530	0071 0073	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531	0071	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532	0071 0073	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533	0071 0073	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Sc ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534	0071 0073	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535	0071 0073	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc></bc></bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534	0071 0073	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC</bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535	0071 0073	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc></bc></bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536	0071 0073	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS	Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc></bc></bc>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538	0071 0073 0076	; H home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS ; Se ; setsec	<pre>Iome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc> in @sect for further operations.</bc></bc></pre>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 537 538 539	0071 0073 0076	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Sc ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS ; Sc ; setsec 6960	<pre>tome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc> in @sect for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b</bc></bc></pre>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 539 540	0071 0073 0076 007? 0079	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Se ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS ; Se ; Se ; Se ; Se ; Se ; Se	<pre>tome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc> in @sect for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @sect</bc></bc></pre>
516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 537 538 539	0071 0073 0076	; E home: 010000 lxi b,0 ; SETT ; Sc ; settrk: 6960 22EF00 C9 ; SETS ; Sc ; setsec 6960	<pre>tome selected drive. Treated as SETTRK(0). ; same as set track zero RK et Track. Saves track address from <bc> in @TRE for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b shld @trk ret EC et Sector. Saves sector number from <bc> in @sect for further operations. mov l,c ! mov h,b</bc></bc></pre>

543			
544		; SETD	
545		; Se	et Disk Memory Address. Saves DMA address
546		;	from <bc> in @DMA and sets @DBNK to @CBNK</bc>
547		;	so that further disk operations take place
548		:	in current bank.
549		,	
550		setdma	
	0070		movel a limay h h
551	0070	6960	mov l,c ! mov h,b
552	007F	22F300	shld @dma
553			
554	0082	3A3B02	lda @cbnk ; default DMA bank is current hank
555			; fall through to set DMA bank
556			
557		; SETB	NK
558		· · · · ·	et DiBk Memory Bank. Saves bank number
559		, .	in @DBNK for future disk dBtB
560		,	transfers.
561		,	transfers.
		.1 1	
562		setbnk	
563	0085	32F600	sta @dbnk
564	0088	C9	ret
565			
566			
567		; SECT	'RN
568		,	ector Translate. Indexes skew table in <de></de>
569		, .	with sector in <bc>. Returns physical Sector</bc>
570		,	in $\langle HL \rangle$ If no skew table ($\langle DE \rangle = 0$) then
571		;	returns physical=logical.
572			
573		sectrn:	
574	0089	6960	mov l,c ! mov h,b
575	0088	7AB3C8	mov a,d ! ora e ! rz
576	008E	EB096E2600	xchg ! dad b ! mov l,m ! mvi h,0
577	0093	C9	ret
578			
579			
580		; REAI	1
581		· · · · ·	ead physical record from currently selected drive,
		, К	
582		•	Finds address of proper read routine from
583		•	extended disk parameter header (XDPH).
584			
585		read:	
586	0094	2AED002600	ihId @adrv ! mvi h,0 ! dad h ; get drive code and double it
587	009A	11000019	lxi d,@dtbl ! dad d ; make address of table entry
588	009E	7E23666F	mov a,m ! inx h ! mov h,m ! mov l,a ; fetch table entry
589	00A2	E5	push h ; save address of table
590	00A3	11F8FF19	lxi d,-8 ! dad d ; point to read routine ddress
591	00A3	C3BDOO	jmp rw\$common ; use common code
592	00/11/	00000	Jup ray common , use common code
593			
594		; WRI7	
595		; W	rite physical sector from currently selected drive.
596			Finds address of proper write routine from
597		;	extended disk parameter header (XDPH).

598						
599		write:				
600	00AA	2AED002600			-	et drive code and double it
601	00B0	11000019	,	dtbl ! dad d		ake address of table entry
602	0084	7E23666F				l,a ; fetch able entry
603	0088	E5	push h	; save addre	ss of tabl	e
604	0089	11F6FF19	lxi d,-l0)! dad d ; po	oint to wr	rite routine address
605						
606		rw\$comm	ion:			
607	00BD	7E23666F	mov a,r	n ! inx h ! mov h	,m ! mov	l,a ; get address of routine
608	00C1	Dl	pop d	; recover ad	dress of t	able
609	00C2	1518	dcx d !	dex d ; po	oint to rel	lative drive
610	00C4	IA32EE00	ldax d !	sta @rdrv	; ge	et relative drive code and post it
611	00C8	1313	inx d ! i	inx d ; po	oint to Dl	PN again
612	00CA	E9	pchl	; leap to dri	ver	
613						
614						
615		; MUL'	ΓΙΟ			
616		; Se	t multipl	e sector count. Sa	ives pass	ed count in
617		•	@CN	T	-	
618						
619		multio				
620	00CB	32F500C9	sta @cr	nt ! ret		
621						
622						
623		; FLUS	Н			
624		; Bl	DS deblo	ocking buffer flus	h. Not ii	mplemented.
625				e		1
626		flush:				
627	00CF	AFC9	xra a ! 1	ret ; retur	n with no	o error
628				,		
629						
630						
631		; error i	nessage o	components		
632	00D1	oDoAo74249dri	-	-	I.'BIOS I	Error on ',0
633	00E3	3A2o542Dootra	-	db ' T-',0	,	- ,-
634		2C20S32D00sed	-			
635						
636						
637		: disk	communi	cation data items		
638		,				
639	00ED		@adrv	ds	1	; currently melected dimk drive
640	00EE		@rdrv	ds	1	; controller relative disk drive
641	00EP		@trk	ds	2	; current track number
	00F1		@eect	ds	2	; Current Sector number
	00F3		@dma	ds	2	; Current DMA address
	00F5	00	@cnt	db	0	; record count for multisectortransfer
	00F6	00	@dbnk		0	; bank for DMA operations
646	0010	00	GUIIK		0	, can't for Divit's operations
647						
648				cseg	· comm	non memory
649				0005	, comm	ion memory
	023B	00	@cbnk	db	0	; bank fOr processor operations
651	0200	00	COUR	40	U	, sank for processor operations
652						
052						

(52 0220					
653 023C	0100	00	2071	end	
AUXIN	0198	99	397#	0.67.11	
AUXIST		017D	113	367#	
AUXOST		010C	114	277#	
AUXOUT		00E0	98	230#	
BANKED		FFFF	8#	186	
BAUD110		0003			
BAUD12000		0008			
BAUD134		0004			
BAUD150		0005			
BAUD1800		00009			
BAUD19200		000F			
BAUD2400		000A			
BAUD300		0006			
BAUD3600		000B			
BAUD4800		000C			
BAUD50		0001			
BAUD600		0007			
BAUD7200		000D			
BAUD75		0002			
BAUD9600		000E			
BAUDNONE		0000			
BELL		0007	27#	632	
BNKSEL		0225	124	475#	
BOOT		0000	91	138#	
BOOT1	0063	164	168#		
BOOTSTACK		00D2	139	178	1981
CCP		0100	31#	171	181
CI1		016F	319	345#	
CINEXT		019E	403#	411	
CINITLOOP		0005	141#	143	
CIRDY	01B2	408	415#		
CISNEXT		0182	372#	379	
CIST1		015D	318	331#	375
CONEXT		00EB	244#	258	
CONIN	0192	95	388#		
CONOST		0106	112	267#	
CONOUT		00DA	96	220#	
CONST	0177	94	357#		
COSNEXT		0117	292#	304	
COST1	0166	327	3381		
COSTER		012C	250	297	3081
CR		000D	25#	632	
CTLQ		0011	281	320	
CTLS		0013	291	323	
DEVTBL		00D2	115	2041	
DINITLOOP		0017	1491	163	
DINITNEXT		0036	152	1611	
DRIVEMSG		00]D1	463	6321	
FALSE		0000	6#		
FLUSH		00CF	120	6261	
GETDRV		00D6	118	211#	
HOME		006E	101	5201	
INSCAN		019B	390	4001	413
IPCHL		*01B6	159	4231	511

406

ISTSCAN	0180	359	3701		
LF	000A	26#	632		
LIST	00E6	97	2391		
LISTST	0112	109	2879		
MBINOUT	0003				
MBINPUT	0001				
MBOUTPUT	0002				
MBSERIAL	0008				
MBSOFTBAUD	0004				
MBXONXOFF	0010	314			
MULTIO	00CB	119	6191		
NEXT	00CD	443#	456		
NEXTDIGIT	01E6	452#	450		
NOTFIRSTSELECT	006D		513#		
NOTOUTDEVICE	000D 00FF	246	255#		
NOTOUTREADY	00F1	240 249#	255 # 250		
		249# 320	230 322#		
NOTQ	0150		-		
HOTS	0157	323	325#	2001	
OSTSCAN	0115	269	279	290#	
OUTSCAN	00E9	223	232	242#	
PDECL	01D3	445#	447		
PMSGEXIT	01C8	432	436#		
PMSGLOOP	01B9	431#	435		
READ	0094	106	SBS#		
RWCOMMON	00BD	591	606#		
SECTORMSG	00E8	46?	634#		
SECTRN	0089	110	573#		
SELDSK	003F	102	500#		
SETBNK	0085	125	562#		
SETDMA	007D	105	550#		
SETJUMPS	0078	169	179	184#	
SETSEC	0077	104	538#		
SETTRK	0071	103	528#		
STOPLOOP	01DE	446	448#		
TABLE10	01F3	442	459#		
TRACKMSG	00E3	465	633#		
TRUE	FFFF	S#	6	8	
WBOOT	006C	92	177#	U	
WRITE	000A	107	599#		
XOFFLIST	022B	317	481#		
?AUXI	0015	79	99#		
?AUXIS	0036	82	113#		
?AUXO	0012	79	98#		
?AUXOS	0012	82	114#		
?BANK	0039	63	477		
BNKSL	0000	83	477 124#	187	
BOOT	0000	85 79	124# 91#	10/	
				417	
?CI 2CINIT	0000	49 50	347	417	
PCINIT	0000	50 40	116	142	
?CIST	0000	49 40	333		
?CO	0000	49 70	252		
?CONIN	0009	79 70	95# 06#	10.1	450
?CONO	000C	79	96#	434	450
?CONOS	0033	82	112#		
?CONST	0006	79	941		

464

?COST	0000	49	316	340				
?DEVIN	003F	82	116#					
?DRTBL	0042	82	118#					
?DVTBL	003C	82	115#					
?FLUSH	0048	83	1201					
?HOME	0018	80	1011					
?INIT	0000	44	145					
?LDCCP	0000	45]	145					
?LIST		-						
	000F	79	97# 100#					
?LISTS	002D	81	109#					
?MLTIO	0045	83	119#					
?MOV	004B	83	1221					
?MOVE	0000	62	122					
?PDEC	0ICB	71	4411	466	468			
?PDERR	0IFD	72	4621					
?PMSG	01B7	71	4271	463	465]	467		
?READ	0027	80	106#					
?RLCCP	0000	45	180					
?SCTRN	0030	81	1101					
?SLDSK	001B	80	1021					
?STBNK	0054	83	125#					
?STDMA	0024	80	1051					
?STSEC	0021	80	1041					
?STTRK	001E	80	1031					
?TIM	004E	83	1231					
?TIME	0042	67	1231					
				102				
?WBOOT	0003	79 80	921	192				
?WRITE	002A	80	1071					
?XMOV	0057	83	1261					
?XMOVE	0000	62	126		501	7 06	600	60 0 II
@ADRV	00ED	56	156	464	501	586	600	639#
@AIVEC	0000	38	368	398				
@AOVEC	0000	38	231	278				
@BNKBF	0000	40						
@CBNK	023B	61	476	554	650#			
@CIVEC	0000	38	358	389				
@CNT	00F5	57	620	6441				
@COVEC	0000	38	222	268				
@CTBL	0000	51	205	313				
@DBNK	00F6	57	563	645#				
@DMA	00F3	57	552	643#				
@DTBL	0000	55	148	212	503	587	601	
@LOVEC	0000	38	240	288	505	507	001	
@MXT'PA	0000	38 39	240 193	200				
				509	610	610#		
@RDRV	00EE	56	155	508	610	640#		
@SECT	00F1	56	468	540	642#			
@TRK	00EF	56	466	530	641#			

CP/M 3 System Guide

End of Appendix E

Appendix F System Control Block Definidon for CP/M 3 BIOS

The SCB.ASM module contains the public definitions of the fields in the System Control Block. The BIOS can reference public variables.

1 2	titl	title 'System Control Block Definition for CP/M3 BIOS'								
2 3 4 5	pul	public @civec, @covec, @aivec, @aovec, @lovec, @bnkbf public @cradma, @crdsk, @vinfo, @resel, @fx, @usrcd public @mltio, @ermde, @erdsk, @media, @bflgs								
6 7	-	public @mitto, @ermde, @erdsk, @media, @bligs public @date, @hour, @min, @sec, ?erjmp, @mxtpa								
8 9 10	FE00 =	srb*base equ	0FE	00H , Baseof the SCB						
10 11 12	FE22 =	@CIVEC	equ	scb\$base+22h ; Console Input Redirection ; vector (word. r/w)						
13 14	FE24 =	@COVEC	equ	scb\$base+24h ; Console Output Redirection ; Vector (word, r/w)						
15 16	FE26 =	@AIVEC	equ	scb\$base+26h ; Auxi1iary Input Redirection ; Vector (word, r/w)						
17 18	FE2B =	@AOVEC	equ	scb\$base+28h ; Auxiliary Output Redirection ; Vector (word. r/w)						
19 20	FE2A =	@LOVEC	equ	scb\$base+2Ah; List Output Redirection ; Vector (word, r/w)						
21 22	FE35 =	@BNKBF	equ	scb\$base+35h ; Address of 128 Byte Buffer ; for Banked BIOS (word, r/o)						
23 24	FE3C =	@CRDMA	equ	scb\$base+3Ch; Current DMA Address ; (word. r/o)						
25 26 27	FE3E = FE3F =	@CRDSK @VINFO	equ equ	scb\$base+3Eh ; Current Disk (byte. r/o) scb\$base+3Fh ; BDOS Variable "INFO" ; (word, r/o)						
29 29	FE41 = FE43 =	@RESEL @FX equ	equ sch\$b	scb\$base+41h ; FC0 Flag (byte, r/o) base+43h . BDOS Function)br Error						
30		-		; Mess age (byte, r/o)						
31 32 33	FE44 = FE4A =	@USRCD @MLTIO	equ equ	scb\$base+44h ; current User Code (byte, r/o) scb\$base+4Ah; Current Multi-Sector Count ; (byte. r/w)						
34	FE4B =	@ERMOE	equ	scb\$base+4Bh; BDOS Error Mode (byte. r/o)						
35	FE51 =	@BROSK	equ	scb\$base+5lh ; BDOS Error Disk (byte.r/o)						
36 37	FE54 =	@MED!A	equ	scb\$base+54h ; Set by BIOS to indicate ; open door (byte. r/w)						
38 r/o)	FE57 =	@BFLOS	equ	scb\$base+57h; BDOS Message Size Flag (byte.						
39 40	FE58 =	@iDATE	equ	scb\$base+58h ; Date in Days Since I Jan 78 ; (word, r/w)						

41	FE5A =	@HOUR	equ	scb\$base+5Ah; Hour in BCD (byte. r/w)
42	FE5B =	@MIN equ	scb\$b	ase+58h ; Minute in BCD (byte. r/w)
43	FE5c =	@SEC equ	scb\$b	ase+5Ch; Second in BCID (byte. r/w)
44	FE5F =	@ERJMP	equ	scb\$base+5Fh ; BDOS Error "Message Jump
45			-	; (word. r/w)
46	FE62 =	@MXTPA	equ	scb\$base+62h; Top of User TPA
47				; (address at 6, 7)(word, r/o)
4B	0000	end		

Appendix G Equates for Mode Byte Bit Fields

	; equates for a	mode byt	e bit fields
mb\$input	equ 0	000\$0001	b; device may do input
mb\$output	equ 0	000\$0010	b; device may do output
mb\$in\$out	equ m	nb\$input+	mb\$output
mb\$soft\$baud	equ 0	000\$0100	b ; software selectable baud rates
mb\$serial	equ 0	000\$1000	b ; device may use protocol
mb\$xon\$xoff	equ 0	001\$0000	b ; XON/XOFF protocol enabled
baud\$none	equ	0	; no baud rate associated with device
baud\$50	equ	1	; S0 baud
baud\$75	equ	2	; 75 baud
baud\$110	equ	3	; 110] baud
baud\$134	equ	4	; 134.5 baud
baud\$150	equ	5	; 150] baud
baud\$300	equ	6	; 300 baud
baud\$600	equ	7	; 600 baud
baud\$1200	equ	8	; 1200 baud
baud\$1800	equ	9	; 1900 baud
baud\$2400	equ	10	; 2400 baud
baud\$3600	equ	11	; 3600 baud
baud\$4800	equ	12	; 4800 baud
baud\$7200	equ	13	; 7200 baud
baud\$9600	equ	14	; 9600 baud
baud\$19200	equ	15	; 19.2k baud

Listing G-1. Equates for Node Byte Fields: NODEBAUD LIB

End of Appendix G

Appendix H Macro Definitions for CP/M 3 BIOS Data Structures

Macro Definitions for CP/M3 BIOS Data Structures. ; dtbl <dph0,dphl,...> - drive table ; dph translate\$table, - disk parameter header disk\$Parameter\$block, checksum\$size, (optional) alloc\$size (optional) - skew table ; skew sectors, skew\$factor, first\$sector\$number ; dpb physical\$sector\$size, - disk parameter block physical\$sectors\$per\$track; number\$tracks, block\$size, number\$dir\$entries, track\$offset, checksum\$vec\$size (optional) Drive Table. Contains 16 one word entries. dtbl macro ?list local ?n set 0 irp ?drv, <?list> set ?n+l dw ?drv endm if ?n > 16 .'Too many drives. Max 16 allowed' exitm endif if ?n < 16 rept (16-?n) dw 0endm endif endm

;

?n

?n

```
dph
       macro ?trans,?dpb,?csize,?asize
       local ?csv,?alv
              dw ?trans
                                    ; translate table address
              db 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
                                    ; BDOS Scratch area
              db 0 ; media flag
              dw?dpb
                             ; disk parameter block
       if not nul ?csize
              dw?csv
                             ; checksum vector
       else
                             ; checksum vector allocated by GENCPM
              dw 0FFFEh
       endif
       if not nul ?asize
              dw ?alv
                             ; allocation vector
       else
                            ; alloc vector allocated by GENCPM
              dw 0FFFEh
       endif
              dw 0fffeh,0fffeh; dirbeb, dtabcb, hash alloc'd by GENCPM
              db 0
                    ; hash bank
       if not nul ?csize
      ds
              ?csize ; checksum vector
?csv
       endif
         if not nul
                     ?asize
?alv
      ds
              ?asize ; allocation vector
       endif
endm
dpb macro ?psize,?pspt,?trks,?bls,?ndirs,?off,?ncks
       local ?spt,?bsh,?blm,?exu,?dsm,?drm,?al0,?all,?cks,?psh,?psm
       local ?n
;; physical sector mask and physical sector shift
       ?psh
              set 0
       ?n
              set ?psize/128
       ?psm Set ?n-1
              rept 8
              ?n
                     set 2n/2
                     if ?n = 0
                     exitm
                     endif
                     set ?psh + 1
              ?psh
              endm
              set ?pspt*(?psize/128)
       ?spt
```

?bsh set 3 ?n set ?bls/1024 rept 8 ?n set 2n/2if ?n - 0 exits endif set ?bsh + 1?bsh endm set ?bls/128-1 ?blm ?size set (?trks-?Off)*?spt ?dsm set ?size/(?bls/128)-1 ?exm set ?bls/1024 if ?dsm > 255 if ?bls - 1024

'Error, can"t have this size disk with 1k block size' exitm endif ?exm set ?exm/2 endif ?exm__set ?exm-1 ?all set 0 ?n set (?ndirs*32+?b1s-l)/?bls rept ?n ?all 1) or 8000h set (?all shr endm ?al0 set high ?all set low ?a11 ?all ?drm set ?ndirs-1 if not nul ?ncks ?cks set ?ncks else ?cks set ?ndirs/4 endif ; 128 byte records per track dw ?spt db ?bsh,?blm ; block shift and mask db ?exm ; extent mask dw ?dsm ; maximum block number ; maximum directory entry number dw ?drm db ?al0,?al1 ; alloc vector for directory dw ?cks ; checksum size dw ?0ff ; offset for system tracks ; physical sector size shift and mask ?psh,?psm db endm

```
gcd macro ?m,?n
       ;; greatest common divisor of m, n
                      produces value gcdn as result
               ..
,,
              ..
,,
                      (used in sector translate table generation)
       ?gcdm set ?m ;;variable for m
       ?gcdn set ?n ;;vsrisble for n
       ?gcdr set 0 ;;variable for r
                      65535
              rept
              ?gcdx set ?gcdm/?gcdn
              ?gcdr set ?gcdm - ?gcdx*?gcdn
                      if ?gcdr = 0
                      exitm
                      endif
              ?gcdm set ?gcdn
              ?gcdn set ?gcdr
              endm
       endm
skew macro ?secs,?skf,?fsc
       generate the translate table
..
,,
       ?nxtsec set 0 ;;next sector to fill
                set 0 ;;moves by one on overflow
       ?nxtbas
       gcd %?secs,?skf
       ;; ?gcdn - gcd(?secs,skew)
       ?neltst set ?secs/?gcdn
       ;; neltst is number of elements to generate
       ;; before we overlap previous elements
       ?nelts set ?neltst
                             ;;counter;
              rept ?secs
                                     ;;once for each sector
              db
                      ?nxtsec+?fsc
              ?nxtsec set ?nxtsec+?skf
                      if ?nxtsec >= ?secs
                      ?nxtsec set ?nxtsec-?secs
                      endif
              ?nelts set ?nelts-1
                      if ? nelts = 0
                      ?nxtbas_set ?nxtbas+1
                      ?nxtsec set ?nxtbas
                      ?nelts set ?neltst
                      endif
              endm
       endm
```

End of Appendix H

Appendix I ACS 8000-15 BIOS Modules

1.1 Boot Loader Module for CP/M 3

The BOOT.ASM module performs system initialization other than and disk I/O. BOOT loads the CCP for cold starts and it for warm starts. Note that the device drivers in the Research sample BIOS initialize devices for a polled, and an interrupt-driven, environment.

			poned, and an interrupt-driven, environment.					
1		title	'Boot loadar module for Cp/M 3.0'					
2								
3	FFFF -	true e	qu -1					
4	0000 =	false e	u not true					
5								
6	FFFF =	banke	d equ true					
7								
8		Į	public ?init,?ldccp,?rlccp,?time					
9			?pmsg,?conin					
10		extrn	@civec,@covec,@aivec,@aovec,@lovec					
11		extrn	@cbnk,?bnksl					
12								
13		maclit	o ports					
14		maclit	•					
15								
16	0005 =	bdos	equ 5					
17			-1					
18			if banked					
19	0001 =	tpa\$b						
20		1	else					
21		tpa\$b						
22			endif					
23								
24			dseg ; init done from banked memory					
25								
26		?init:						
27	0000 210080	2200	lxi h,08000h ! shld @civec ! shld @covec ; assign console to CRT:					
28	0009 210040	2200	lxi h,04000h ! shld @lovec ; assign printer to LPT:					
29	000F 210020	2200	lxi h,02000h ! shld @aivec ! shld @aovec ; assign AUX to CRTI:					
30	0018 21EF00	CD2S	lxi h,init\$table ! call out\$blocks ; set up misc hardware					
31	00IE 218700	CD00	lxi h, signon\$msg ! call ?pmsg ; print signon message					
32	0024 C9		ret					
33								
34		out\$b	locks:					
35	0025 7EB7C	847	mov a,m ! ora a ! rz ! mov b,a					
36	0029 234E23	;	inx h ! mov c,m ! inx h					
37			outir					
38	002C+EDB3	DB	0EDH,0B3H					

39	002E C32500	jmp ou	it\$blocks	
40				
41				
42		cseg	; boot loading most be	done from resident memory
43				
44	;	This ve	ersion of the boot loade	er loads the CCP from a file
45	;	called	CCP.COM on the syste	em drive (A:).
46				
47				
48	?ldccp			
49		; First	time, load the A:CCP,C	COM file into TPA
50	0000 AF32DB00	xra a !	Sta ccp\$fcb+15	; zero extent
51	0004 21000022EC	lxi h,0	shld fcb\$nr	; start at beginning of file
52	000A llCC00CD73	lxi d,co	cp\$fcb ! call open	; open file containing CCP
53	0010 3CCA4A00	inr a !	jz no\$CCP	; error if no file '
54	0014 110001CD78	lxi d,0	00h ! call setdma	; Start of TPA
55	001A118000CD7D	lxi d,1	28 ! call setmulti	; allow up to 16k bytes
56	0020 IICC00CD82	lxi d,co	cp\$fcb ! call read	; load the thing
57		,	1	; now,
58				; copy CCP to bank 0 for reloading
59	0026 2100010180	lxi	h;0100h ! lxi b,0C80h	; clone 3.125K, just in case
60	002C 3A0000F5	lda	@cbnk ! push psw	; save current bank
61	1d\$1:		Contraction from the second	,
62	0030 3E01CD0000	mvi	a,tpa\$bank ! call ?bnk	s : select TPA
63	0035 7EF5	mov	a,m ! push psw	; get a byte
64	0037 3E02CD0000	mvi	a,2 ! call ?bnksl	; select extra bank
65	003C F177	рор	psw ! mov m,s; save t	
66	003E 230B	inx	h ! dcx b	; bump pointer, drop count
67	0040 78B1	mov	a,b ! ora c	; test for done
68	0042 C23000	jnz	ld\$1	
69	0045 FlCD0000	pop	psw ! call ?bnksl	; restore original bank
70	0049 C9	ret		, restore originar ounit
70		100		
72	no\$CC	` ₽·		; here 1f we couldn't find the file
73	004A 21AB00CD00	lxi	h,ccp\$msg ! call ?pms	
74 74	0050 CD0000	call ?c		; get a response
75	0053 C30000	jmp	?ldccp	; and try again
76	0055 050000	Juib	lideop	, and try ugani
77				
78	?rlccp			
79	0056 2100010180	lxi	h,0l00h ! lxi b,0C80h	clone 3 125K
80	rl\$1:	IAI		, clone 5.1251
80 81	005C 3B02CD0000	mvi	a,2 ! call ?bnksl	; select extra bank
82	005C 3B02C D0000	mov	a,m ! push psw	; get a byte
82	0063 3E01CD0000	mvi	a,tpa\$bank ! call ?bnk	
83 84	0063 5E01CD0000 0068 F177		psw ! mov m,a; save 1	
т		рор		the byte

85 006A 230B inx h ! dcx b ; bump pointer, drop count 86 006C 78B1 a,b ! ora c ; test for done mov 006E C25C00 87 rl\$1 jnz 88 0071 C9 ret 89 90 ; No external clock. 91 ?time: 92 0072 C9 ret 93 94 ; CP/M BDOS Function Interfaces 95 96 open: 97 0073 0E0FC30500 c,15 ! jmp bdos; open file control block mvi 98 99 setdma: 100 0078 0EIAC30500 mvi c,26 ! jmp bdos ; set data transfer address 101 102 setmulti: 103 0070 0E2CC30500 mvi c,44 ! jmp bdos ; set record count 104 105 read 106 0082 0E14C30500 c,20 ! jmp bdos ; read records mvi 107 108 109 0087 0D0A0D0A43signon\$msg db 13,10,13,10,'CP/M Version 1.0, sample BIOS',13,10,0 110 111 00AB 0D0A42494Fccp\$msg db 13,10,'BIOS Err on A: No CCP COM file',0 112 113 114 00CC 0143435020ccp\$fcb db 1, 'CCP ','COM',0,0,0,0 115 00**D**C ds 16 00EC 000000 fcb\$nr 116 db 0,0,0 117 118 00BF 0326CFFF07init\$table db 3,p\$zpio\$3a,0CFh,0FFh,07h ; set up config port 119 00F4 0327CF0007 db 3,p\$zpio\$3b,0CFh,000h,07h;set up bank port 120 00F9 012500 1,p\$bank\$select,0 ; select bank 0 db 121 00FC 00 db 0 ; end of init \$table 122 123 00FD end BANKED FFFF 6# 18 BC 0000 **BDOS** 0005 16# 97 100 103 106 CCPFCB 00**CC** 50 52 56 114# 00AB 73 111# CCPMSG

BE	0002			
FALSE	0000	4#		
FCBNR	00 B C	51	116#	
EL	0004			
INITTABLE	00EF	30		119#
IX	0004			
IY	0004			
1,01	0030	61#	68	
NOCCP	004A		72#	
OPEN	0073		96#	
OUTBLOCKS0025		34#		
PBANKSELECT	0025			
PBAUDCON1	000C			
PBAUDCON2	0030			
PBAUDCON34	0031			
PBAUDLPT1	000E			
PBAUDLPT2	0032			
РВООТ	0014			
PCENTDATA	0011			
PCENTSTAT	0010			
PCON2DATA	002C			
PCON2STAT	002D			
PCON3DATA	002E			
PCON3STAT	0021			
PCON4DATA	002A			
PCON4STAT	002B			
PCONFIGURATION	0024			
PCRTDAT'A	00IC			
PCRTSTAT	001D			
PFDCMND	0004			
PFDDATA	0007			
PFDINT	0008			
PFDMISC	0009			
PFDSBCTOR	000E			
PFDSTAT	0004			
PFDTRACK	0005			
PINDEX	0001			
PLPT2DATA	0028			
PLPT2STAT	0029			
PLP'TDATA	001E			
PLPTSTAT	0011			
PRTC	0033			
PSELECT	0008			
PWD1797	0004			
PZCTC1	000C			
PZCTC2	0030			

PZDART	00IC						
PZDNA	0000						
PZPIO1	0008						
PZPIOIA	000A						
PZPIO1B	$000\mathbf{B}$						
PZPIO2	0010						
PZPIO2A	0012						
PZPIO2B	0013						
PZPIO3	0024						
PZPIO3A	002E	118					
PZPIO3B	0027	119					
PZSIO1	0028						
PZSIO2	002C						
RIAD	0082	56	105#				
RL1	005C	80#	87				
SETDMA	0078	54	99#				
SETMULTI	007 D	55	102#				
SIGNONMSG	0087	31	109#				
TPABANK	0001	19#	21#	62	83		
TRUE	FFFF	3#	4	6			
?BNKSL	0000	11	62	64	69	81	83
?CONIN	0000	9	74				
?INIT	0000	8	26#				
?LDCCP	0000	8	484	75			
?PMSG	0000	9	31	73			
?RLCCP	0056	8	78#				
?TINE	0072	8	914				
@AIVEC	0000	10	29				
@AOVEC	0000	10	29				
@CBNK	0000	11	60				
@CIVEC	0000	10	27				
@COVEC	0000	10	27				
@LOVEC	0000	10	28				

I.2 Character I/O Handler

I.2 Character I/O Handler for Z80 Chip--based System

The CHARIO ASM module performs all character device , input, output, and status polling. CHARIO contains character device characteristics table.

1	title 'C	haracter I/O handler for z80 chip based system'
2 3 4		; Character I/O for the Modular CP/M 3 BIOS
4 5 6		; limitations:
0 7 8		; haud rates 19200;7200,3600,1800 and 134 ; are approximations.
9 10		; 9600 is the maximum baud rate that is likely
11 13		; to work, ; haud rates 50, 75, and 110 are not supported
14 15		
16 17		public ?cinit,?ci,?co,?cist,?cost public @ctbl
18 19		maclib Z80 ; define Z80 op codes
20 21 22		maclib ports ; define port addresses maclib modebaud ; define mode bits and baud equates
22 23 24	$0006 = \max$	equ 6
24 25 26		cseg
27	?cinit:	
28 29	0000 79FE06CA42 0006 D0	mov a,c ! cpi max\$devlces ! jz cent\$init ; init parallel printer rnc ; invalid device
30	0007 692600	mov l,c ! mvi h,0 ; make 16 bits from device number
31 32	000A E5 000B 292929	push h ; save device in stack dad h ! dad h ! dad h ; *8
33	000F 11E900196E	lxi d, $@$ ctbl+7 ! dad d ! mov 1;m ; get baud rate
34	0013 7DFE07	mov a,1 ! cpi baud 600 ; see if baud > 300
35	0016 3E44D21D00	mvi a,44h ! jnc hi s peed ; if > 600, use $*16$ mode
36	001B 3FC4	mvi a,0C4h ; else, use *64 mode
37	hi\$spe	
38	0010 323501	sta sio\$reg\$4
39	0020 2600111B01	mvi h,0 ! lxi d,speed\$table ! dad d ; point to counter entry
40	0026 7E322F01	mov a,m ! sta speed ; get and save ctc count
41	007A HI	pop h ; recover
42	002A El 0028 11DC0019	pop h ; recover lxi d,data\$ports ! dad d ; point at SIO port address

```
43
       002F 7E3C323001
                            mov a,m ! inr a ! sta sio$port ; get and save port
44
       0034 IIFAFF19
                            lxi d,baud$ports-data$ports ! dad d
                                                               ; offset to baud rate port
45
                            mov a,B ! sta ctc$port
       0038 7E322C01
                                                        ; get and save
                            lxi h.serlal$init$tbl
46
       003C 212801
47
       003F C34500
                            imp stream$out
48
49
                     cent$init:
50
                            lxi h,pio$init$tbl
       0042 213901
51
52
                     stream$out:
53
       004S 7FB7C8
                            mov a, m ! ora a ! rz
       0048 47234F23
                            mov b,a ! inx h ! mov c;m ! inx h
54
55
                            outir
56
       004C+EDB3 DB
                            0EDH,0B3H
57
       004E C34500
                            imp stream$out
58
59
60
                     ?ci:
                                 ; character input
61
62
       0051 78FE06D263
                            mov a,b ! cpi 6 ! jnc null$input ; can't read from centronics
63
                     cil:
64
       0057 C06600CA57
                                              ; wait for character ready
                            call ?cist ! jz cii
65
       0050 00
                            dcr c ! inp a
                                                    ; get data
                                   0EDH,A*8+40H
66
       00SE+ED78
                            DB
67
       0060 E67F
                            ani 7Fh
                                                   ; mask parity
68
       0062 C9
                            ret
69
70
                     null$Input:
71
       0063
              3E1A
                            mvi a,lAh
                                          ; return a ctl-Z for no device
72
       0065 C9
                            ret
73
74
                    ?ciat:
                                 ; character input Status
75
76
       0066 78FE06D27D mov a,b ! cpi 6 ! jnc null$status ; can't read from centronics
77
                            mov l.b \mid mvi h.0
                                                 ; make device number 16 bits
       006C 682600
78
       006F 11DC0019
                            lxi d,data$ports ! dad ; make pointer to port address
79
       0073 4E0C
                            mov c,m ! inr c
                                                 ; get SIO status port
80
                            inp a
                                                  ; read from status port
81
       0075+ED78
                            DB
                                   0EDH,A*8+40H
82
       0077 E601
                            ani l
                                                  ; isolate RxRdy
                                   ; return with zero
83
       0079 C8
                            ŕΖ
84
       007A F6FF
                            ori 0FFh
85
       007C C9
                            ret
86
87
                    null$status:
88
       0070 AFC9
                            xra a ! ret
```

```
89
90
                   ?co:
                                                ; character output
91
             78FE06CA9E mov a,b ! cpi 6 ! jz centronics$out
      007F
92
                           inc null$Output
      0085
             029000
93
      0088 79F5
                           mov a,c ! push psw
                                                ; save character from <C>
94
      008A C5
                           push b
                                                ; save device number
95
                   co$spin:
      008B CDB300CA8 call ?cost ! jz co$spin ; wait for TxEmpty
96
97
      0091 E16C2600
                           pop h ! mov l,h ! mvi h,0
                                                       ; get device number in <HL>
98
      0095
                           lxI d,data$ports ! dad d
                                                       ; make address of port address
            11DC0019
99
      0099 4E
                           mov c.m
                                        ; get port address
100
      009A Fl
                           pop psw ! outp a
                                               ; send data
     009B+ED79
                                  0EDH,A*8+41H
101
                           DB
102
                   null$output:
103
      0090 C9
                           ret
104
                   centronics$out:
105
106
      009E DBl0E620C2 in p$centstat ! ani 20h ! jnz csntronics$out
107
      00A5 79D311
                           mov a,c ! out p$centdata
                                                       ; give printer data
108
      00A8 DBI0F60lD3 in p$centstat ! ori 1 ! out p$centstat ; set strobe
109
      00AE E67ED310
                           ani 7Eh ! out p$centstat
                                                            ; clear strobe
110
      00B2 C9
                           ret
111
112
                   ?cost:
                                                ; character output status
113
      00B3 78FE06CACD mov a, b ! cpi 6 ! jz cent$stat
114
      00B9 027000
                           inc null$status
115
      00BC 682600
                           mov 1, b ! mvi h, 0
                           lxi d,data$ports ! dad d
116
      00BF 11DC0019
                           mov c,m ! inr c
117
      00C3 4E0C
118
                           inp a ; get input status
119
     00CS+ED78
                           DB
                                  0EDH,A*8+40H
      00C7 E604C8
120
                                         ; test transmitter empty
                           ani 4 ! rz
      00CA F6FFC9
                           ori 0FFh ! ret ; return true if ready
121
122
123
124
                   cent$stat:
125
      00CD DBl02F
                           in p$centstat ! cas
126
      0000 E620C8
                           ani 20h ! rz
127
      0003 F6FFC9
                           ori 0FFh ! ret
128
129
                                      ; CTC ports by physical device number
                   baud$ports:
130
      0006 0C0E3031
                                 p$baud$con1, p$baud$lpt1, p$baud$con2, p$baud$con 34
                           db
131
      000A 3132
                                 p$baud$con34,p$baud$lpt2
                           db
132
133
                   data$ports:
                                      ; serial base ports by physical device number
      00DC 1CIE2C2E
134
                                 p$crt$data,p$lpt$data,p$con2data,p$con3data
                           db
```

135	00E0 2	2A28	db	p\$con4data,p\$lpt2data
136				
137				
138	00E2 4	1352542020@		db 'CRT '; device 0, CRT port 0
139)F	db mb	o\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$softbaud
140)E		ud\$9600
141				PT ' ; device 1, LPT port 0
142		F		o\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$softbaud+mb\$xonxoff
143		J E		ud\$9600
144		352543120		RT1 '; device 2, CRT port 1
145)F		p\$in\$out+mb\$serlal+mb\$softbaud
146)E		ud\$9600
147		352543220		RT2 ' ; device 3, CRT port 2
148)F		p\$'in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$softbaud
149		CE		ud\$9600
150		352543320		RT3 ' ; device 4, CRT port 3
151	0108 0)F	db 'mb	b\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$softbaud
152	0L09 0)E		ud\$9600
153		641582020		AX '; device 5, LPT port 1 used for VAX interface
154	0110 0)F	db mb	o\$in\$out+mb\$serial+mb\$softbaud
155	0111 0)E	db bau	ud\$9600
156	0112 4	3454E2020	db 'CE	EN '; device 6, Centronics rerallel printer
157	0118 0)2	db mb	o\$output
158	0119 0	00	db bau	ud\$none
159	011A 00	db 0		; table terminator
160				
161				
162	011 B 00	FFFFFFE9S	beed\$ta	able db 0,255,255,255,233,208,104,208,104,69,52,35,
				26,17,13,7
163				
164			init\$tbl	
165	012B 0			2 ; two bytes to CTC
166	012C	ctc\$po		ds I ; port addresS of CTC
167		17	db	47h ; CTC mode byte
168	012E	Speed		1 ; baud multiplier
169)7	db	7 ; 7 bytes to SIO
170	0130	Sio\$pc		ds 1 ; port address of SIO
171		80311104	db	18h,3,0Elh,4
172	0135	sio\$re§	-	ds 1
173	0136 051		db	5,0EAh
174	0138 00		db	0 ; terminator
175				
176		130F07 pio\$		
177	0130 03	12CFF807	db	3,p\$zpio\$2a,0CFh,0F8h,07h
178	0142 00		db 0	
179				

180 0143		end					
BAUDII0	0003						
BAUD1200	0008						
BAUD134	0004						
BAUD150	0005						
BAUD1800	0009						
BAUO19200	000F						
BAUD2400	000A						
BAUD300	0006						
BAUD3600	$000\mathbf{B}$						
BAUD4800	000C						
BAUD50	0001						
BAUD600	0007	34					
BAUD7200	0000						
BAUD75	0002						
BAUD9600	000E	140	143	146	149	152	155
BAUDNONE	0000	158					
BAUDPORTS	0006	44	129#				
BC	0000						
CENTINIT	0042	28	49#				
CENTRONICSOUT	00911	91	105#	106			
CENTSTAT	00C0	113	124#				
CII	0057	63#	64				
COSPIN	008B	95#	96				
CTCPORT	012C	45	166#				
DATAPORTS	00 D C	42	44	78	98	116	133#
DE	0002						
HISPEED	001 D	35	37#				
HL	0004						
IX	0004						
IY	0004						
MAXDEVICES	0006	23#	28				
MBINOUT	0003	139	142	145	148	151	154
MBINPUT	0001						
MBOUTPUT	0002	157					
MBSERIAL	$000\mathbf{B}$	139	142	145	148	151	154
MBSOFTBAUD	0004	139	142	145	148	151	154
MBXONXOFF	0010	142					
NULLINPUT	0063	62	70#				
NULLOUTPUT	0090	92	102#				
NULLSTATUS	0070	76	87#	114			
PBANKSELECT	0025						
PBAUDCON1	000C	130					
PBAUDCON2	0030	130					
PBAUDCON34	0031	130	131				
PBAUDLPT1	000E	130					

PBAUDLPT2	0032	131				
PBOOT	0014					
PCENTDATA	0011	107				
PCENTSTAT	0010	106	108	108	109	125
PCON2DATA	002C	134				
pCON2STAT	002D					
PCON3DATA	002E	134				
pCON3STAT	002F					
PCON4DATA	002A	135				
PCON4STAT	002B					
PCONFIGURATION	N 0024					
PCRT'DATA	001C	134				
PCRTSTAT	001D					
PFDCMBD	0004					
PFDDATA	0007					
PFDINT	0008					
PFDMISC	0009					
PFDSECTOR	0006					
PFDSTAT	0004					
PFDTRACK	0005					
PINDEX	000F					
PIOINITTBL	0139	50	176#			
PLPT2DATA	0028	135				
PLPT2ST'AT	0029					
PLPTDATA	001E	134				
PLPTSTAT	001F					
PRTC	0033					
PSELECT	0008					
PWD1797	0004					
PZCTCl	000 C					
PZCTC2	0030					
PZDART	001C					
PZDMA	0000					
PZPIO1	0008					
PZPIOIA	000A					
PZPIO1B	000B					
PZPIO2	0010					
PZPIO2A	0012	177				
PZPIO2B	0013	176				
PZPIO3	0024	170				
PZPIO3A	0026					
PZPIO3B	0020					
PZSIO1	0027					
PZSIO2	0028 002C					
SERIALINITTBL	002C	46	164#			
SIOPORT	012 D	40	104# 170#			
	0130	J.	1/0#			

SIOREG4		0135	38	172#	
SPEED		012E	40	168#	
SPEEDTAE	BLE	011 B	39	162#	
STREAMO	UT	0045	47	52#	57
?CI		0051	16	60#	
?CINIT		0000	16	27#	
?CIST		0066	16	64	74#
?CO		007F	16	90#	
?COST	0083	16	96	112#	
@CTBL		00E2	17	33	138#

1.3 Drive Table

The DRVTBL.ASM module points to the data structures for each configured disk drive. The drive table determines which physical disk unit is associated with which logical drive. The data structure for each disk drive is called an Extended Disk Parameter Header (XDPH).

1			public	@dt	ltbl
2			extin f	dsdC	0,fdsdl
3					
4			cseg		
5					
6 (0000	00000	000 @	dtbl	dw fdsd0,fdsd1
7 (0004	00000	00000	dw	v 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0; drives C-P non-existent
8					
9 (0020		end		
FDSDO	I		0000	2	6
FDSD1		0000	2	6	
@DTBI			0000	1	6#

Listing I-3. Drive Table

1.4 Z80 DMA single-density Disk Handler

The FD1797SD module initializes the disk controllers for the disks described in the Disk Parameter Headers and Disk Parameter Blocks contained in this module. FD1797SD is written for hardware that supports Direct Memory Access (DMA).

1	title 'wd1797 w/ Z80 DMA Single density diskette handler'
2	
3	; CP/M-80 Version 3 Modular BIOS
4	Diels I/O Madula for and 1707 haved dielected sustains
5	; Disk I/O Module for wd1797 based diskette systems
7	; Initial version 0.01,
8	Single density floppy only jrp, 4 Aug
9	
10	dseg
11	
12	; Disk drive dispatc))ing tables for linked BIOS
13	public field field
14 15	public fdsd0,fdsdl
16	; Variables containing parameters passed by BDOS
17	

18	extr	n @ad	rv,@rdrv					
19		<u> </u>	na,@trk,@sect					
20		extrn @dbnk						
21		0						
22	: Svst	em Cont	rol Block variables					
23	, ,							
24	extr	n @eri	nde ; BDOS error mode					
25		\bigcirc	,					
26	: Utili	tv routir	ies in standard BIOS					
27	,							
28	extrn	?wbo	ot ; warm hoot vector					
29	extrn		g; printmessage @ <hl> up to 00, saves <bc> & <de></de></bc></hl>					
30	extrn		; print binary number in $$ from 0 to 99,					
31	extrn		r; print BIOS disk error header					
32		-	,?cono ; con in and out					
33	extrn		; get console status					
34	•••••							
35								
36	· Port	Address	Equates					
37	, 1 010 1	1441055						
38		saclib	ports					
39		540110	pont					
40	· CP/N	13 Disk	derinition macros					
41	,							
42		maclib	cpm3					
43			•p					
44	· Z80	macro li	brary instruction definitions					
45	, 200							
46		maclib	780					
47			200					
48	: com	mon cor	trol characters					
49	,							
50	000b = cr	equ 13						
51	000A =	lf	equ 10					
52	0007 = bell	equ 7						
53		• • • •						
94								
55	: E2	stended	Disk Parameter Headers (XPDNS)					
56	, ב		(<i>D</i> ())					
57	0000 E600		dw fd\$write					
58	0002 DC00		dw fd\$read					
59	0004 DB00		dw fd\$login					
60	0006 BE00		dw fd\$init0					
61	0008 0000		db 0,0 ; relative drive zero					
62		fdsd0	dph trans, dpbsd, 16,31					
63	000A+A400	1	DW TRANS ; TRANSLATE TABLE ADDRESS					
~~								

64 000C+000000000 DB 0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0 ; BDOS SCRATCH AREA 65 0015+00 **DB** 0 ; MEDIA FLAG 66 0016+0000 **DW DPBSD** ; DISK PARAMETER BLOCK 67 DW ??0001 0018+2300 ; CHECKSUM VECTOR 68 001A+3300 DW ??0002 ; ALLOCATION VECTOR 69 00IC+FEFFFEFFFE DW 0FFFEH,0FFFEH,0FFFEH ; DIRBCB, DTABCB, HASH ALLOC'D BY GENCPM DB 070 0022 + 00; HASH BANK 71 ??0001 DS 0023 +16 ; CHECKSUM VECTOR 72 0033 +??0002DS 31 ; ALLOCATION VECTOR 73 74 0052 E600 dw fd\$write 79 0054 DC00 fd\$read dw 76 0056 DB00 dw fd\$login 77 0058 CD00 dw fd\$init1 78 00SA 0100 db 1,0 ; relative drive one 79 fdsdl dph trans, dpbsd, 16, 31 80 DW TRANS ; TRANSLATE TABLE ADDRESS 005C+A400 ; BDOS SCRATCH AREA 81 005E+000000000 DB 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 82 0067 + 00**DB** 0 ; MEDIA FLAG 83 0068 + 0000DW DPBSD ; DISK PARAMETER BLOCK 006A+7500 84 DW ??0003 ; CHECKSUM VECTOR 85 006C+8500 DW ??0004 ; ALLOCATION VECTOR 006E+FEFFFEFFFE DW 0FFFEH,0FFFEH,0FFFEH; DIRBCB, DTABCB, HASH 86 ALLOC'D BY GENCPM 87 0074+00 **DB** 0 ; HASH BANK 0075+ 770003 88 DS ; CHECKSUM VECTOR 16 89 0085+ 770004 DS 31 : ALLOCATION VECTOR 90 91 cseg ; DPB must be resident 92 93 dpbsd dpb 128,26,77,1024,64,2 94 DW ??0005; 128 BYTE RECORDS PER TRACK 0000+1A00 95 0002 + 0307DB ??0006,??000 ; BLOCK SHIFT' AND MASK DB ??0008; EXTENT MASK 96 0004 + 0097 000S+F200 DW ??0009; MAXIMUM BLOCK NUMBER 98 0007+3F00 DW ??0010 ; MAXIMUM DIRECTORY ENTRY NUMBER 99 0009+C000 DB ??0011,??0012 ; ALLOC VECTOR FOR DIRECTORY 100 0008+1000 DW ??0013 ; CHECKSUM SIZE DW 101 000D+0200 : OFFSET FOR SYSTEM TRACKS 2 DB ??0014,??0015 ; PHYSICAL SECTOR SIZE SHIFT AND 102 000F+0000 MASK 103 104 dseg ; rest is banked 105

106		trans	skew	26.6.1
107	00A4+01		DB	?NXTSEC+1
108	00A5+07		DB	?NXTSEC+1
109	00A6+0D		DB	?NXTSEC+1
110	00A7+13		DB	?NXTSEC+1
111	00A8+19		DB	?NXTSEC+1
112	00A9+05		DB	?NXTSEC+1
113	00AA+0B		DB	?NXTSEC+1
114	00AB+11		DB	?NXTSEC+1
115	00AC+17		DB	?NXTSEC+1
116	00AD+03		DB	?NXTSEC+1
117	00AE+09		DB	?NXTSEC+1
118	00AF+0F		DB	?NXTSEC+1
119	00B0+15		DB	?NXTSEC+1
120	00BI+02		DB	?NXTSEC+1
121	00 B 2+09		DB	?NXTSEC+1
122	00B3+0E		DB	?NXTSEC+1
123	00 B 4+14		DB	?NXTSEC+1
124	00B5+1A		DB	?NXTSEC+1
125	00B6+06		DB	?NXTSEC+1
126	00 B 7+0 C		DB	?NXTSEC+1
127	00B8+12		DB	?NXTSEC+1
128	00B9+18		DB	?NXTSEC+1
129	00BA+04		DB	?NXTSEC+1
130	00 BB +0A		DB	?NXTSEC+1
131	00 BC +10		DB	?NXTSEC+1
132	00 BD +16		DB	?NXTSEC+1
133				
134				
135				
136		; Disk	I/O rou	itines for standardized BIOS interface
137				
138		; Initia	lization	entry point.
139				
140		; c	alled fo	r first time initialization.
141				
142				
143		fd\$init	0	
144	00BE 2ICE00)	lxi h,ii	nit\$table
145		fd\$init	\$next:	
146	00CI 7EB7CI	3	mov a	,m ! ora a ! rz
147	00C4 47234E	23	mov b	,a ! inx h ! mov c,m ! inx h
148			outir	
149	00C8+EDB3		DB	0EDH,0B3H
150	00CA C3C10	0	jmp fc	l\$init\$next
151				

152	fd\$ini	,
153	00CD C9	ret
154		
155		able db 4,p\$zpio\$1A
156	00D0 CFC217FF	db 11001111b, 11000010b, 00010111b,1111111b
157	00D4 040B	db 4,p\$zpio\$lB
158	00D6 CFDD17FF	db 11001111b, 11011101b, 00010111b,1111111b
159	00DA 00	db 0
160		
161		
162	fd\$lo	gin
163		; This entry is called when a logical drive is about to
164		; be logged into for the purpose of density determination.
165		
166		; It may adjust the parameters contained in the disk
167		; parameter header pointed at by <de)< td=""></de)<>
168		
169	00 DB C9	ret ; we have nothing to do in
170		; simple single density only environment.
171		
172		
173		; disk READ and WRITE entry points.
174		
175		; these entries are called with the following arguments:
176		
177		; relative drive number in @rdrv (8 bits)
178		; absolute drive number in @adrv (8 bits)
179		, disk transfer address in @dma (16 bitS)
180		; disk transfer bank in @dbnk (8 bits)
181		; disk track address in @trk (16 bits)
182		; disk sector address in @sect (16 bits)
183		; pointer to XDPH in <de></de>
184		, period to 122111 22
185		; they transfer the appropriate data, perform retries
186		; if necessary, then return an error code in <a>
187		
188	fd\$rea	ad.
189	00DC 211802	lxi h,read\$msg ; point at " Read "
190	00DF 3E880601	mvi a,88h ! mvi b,01 h ; 1797 read + Z80DMA direction
191	00E3 C3ED00	jmp rw\$common
191		Jub in the common
192	fd\$wi	ite
195 194	00E6 211F02	lxi h,write\$msg ; point at " Write "
194 195	00E0 211F02 00E9 3EA80605	mvi a,0A8h ! mvi b,05h ; 1797 write + Z80DMA direction
195	00E2 JEA00003	
	,	jmp wr\$common ; fall through
197		

```
198
                     rw$common:
                                                 ; seek to correct track (if necessary),
199
                                                 ; initialize DMA controller,
200
                                                 ; and issue 1797 command.
201
                            shid operation$name ; save message for errors
202
      0QED 222702
203
       00F0 321102
                            sta disk$command
                                                  ; save 1797 command
204
       00F3 7832A802
                            mov a,b ! sta zdma$direction ; save Z80DMA direction code
205
                            lhld @dma ( shld zdma$dma ; get and save DMA address
      00F7 2A0000229F
206
                            lda @rdrv ! mov 1,a ! mvi h, 0 ; get controller-relative disk drive
      00FD 3A00006F26
                            lxi d,select$table ! dad d
207
      0103 11160219
                                                         ; point to select mask for drive
208
      0107 7E321202
                            mov a,m ! sta select$mask
                                                         ; get select mask and save it
209
      0108 D308
                            outp$Select
                                          ; select drive
210
                     more$retries:
211
      010D 0E0A
                            mvi c, 10
                                          ; allow 10 retries
212
                     retry$operation:
213
      010F C5
                            push b ; save retry counter
214
215
      0110 3A12022113
                            lda select$mask ! lxi h,old$select ! cmp m
216
      011777
                            mov m.a
217
      0118 C22D01
                            jnz new$track ; if not same drive as last, seek
218
219
      011B 3A00002114
                            lda @trk ! lxi h,old$track ! csp m
220
      0122 77
                            mov m,a
221
      0123 C22001
                            jnz new$track ; if not same track, then seek
222
223
                            in p$fdmisc ! ani 2 ! jnz same$track ; head still loaded, we are OK
       0126 DB09E602C2
224
225
                                   ; or drive or unloaded head means we should ...
                     new$track:
226
      012D CDA901
                            call check$seek
                                                ; .... read address and seek if wrong track
227
                            lxi b, 16667
228
      0130 011B41
                                               ; 100 ms / (24 t states*250 ns)
229
                     spin$loop:
                                                        for head/seek settling
                                             ; wait
230
      0133 0B
                            dcx b
231
      0134 78B1
                            mov a,b ! ora c
232
       0136 C23301
                            jnz spin$loop
233
234
                     same$track
235
                            lda @trk ! out p$fdtrack
       0139 3A00000305
                                                               ; give 1797 track
236
       013E 3A0000D306
                            lda @sect ! Out p$fdsector
                                                                     and sector
237
238
      0143 219A02
                            lxi h,dma$block
                                                 ; point to dma command block
239
       0146 010011
                            lxi b,dmab$length*256 + p$zdma
                                                               ; command block length and
                                                               port address
240
                            outir
                                   ; send commands to Z80 DMA
                            DB
                                   0EDH,0B3H
241
      0149+EDB3
242
```

243 244 245 246 247 248	0148 DB2S 014D E63F47 0150 3 A00000F0F 0155 E6C0B0 0158 D325	in p\$bankse)ect; get old value of bank select portani 3Fh ! mov b,a; mask off DMA bank and savelda @dbnk ! rrc ! rrc; get DMA bank to 2 hi-order bitsani 0C0h ! ora b; merge with other bank stuffout p\$bankselect; and select the correct DMA bank
248 249 250 251 252	015A 3A1102 015D CDDS01 0160 321502	Ida disk\$command; get 1797 commandcall exec\$co'''''and; start it then wait for IREQ and read statussta disk\$status; savesta disk\$status; save
253 254 255	0163 C1 0164 B7C8	pop b; recover retry counterora a ! rz; check status and return to BDOS if no error
255 256 257	0166 E610 0168 C4A901	ani 0001\$0000b ; see if record not found error cnz check\$seek ; if a record not found, we might need to seek
258 259 260	0168 0DC20F01	dcr c ! jnz retry\$operation
261 262	; supp	ress error message if BDOS is returning errors to application.
263 264	016F 3A0000FEFF	lda @ermde ! cpi 0FFh ! jz hard\$error
265 266	; Had	permanent error, print message like:
267 268	;	BIOS Err on d: T-nn, S-mm, <operation> <type>, Retry ?</type></operation>
269 270	0177 CD0000	call ?pderr ; print message header
270 271 272	017A 2A2702CD00	1hld operation\$name ! call ?pmsg ; last function
272 273 274		; then, messages for all indicated error bits
275 276 277	0180 3A1502 0183 212902 errml:	Ida disk\$status; get Status byte from last errorlxi h,error\$table; pointat table of message addresses
278 279 280 281	0186 5E235623 018A 87F5	mov e,m ! Inx h ! mov d,m ! inxh ; get next message addressadd a ! push psw; shiftschg ! cc ?pmsg ! xchg; printpop psw ! jnz errml; if any more bits left, continue
281 282 283 284 285	0195 218A02CD00 019B CDF50I 019E FE59CA0D01	lxi h,error\$msg ! call ?pmsg ; print <bel>, Retry (Y/N) ? "call u\$conin\$echo ; get operator responsecpi 'Y' ! jz more\$retries ; Yes, then retry 10 more times</bel>
283 286 287	019E FE39CA0D01 hard\$e 01A3 3E01C9	

288			
289	canc	el [.]	; here to abort job
290	01A6 C30000		; leap directly to warmstart vector
291		JP	,
292			
293		; subroutine to seek	if on wrong track
294			p new track or drive
295		,	1
296	chec	k\$seek:	
297	01A9 C5	push b; save error c	counter
298	01AA CDEl01	•	o read ID, put track in
299	01AD CABE01	jz id\$ok ; if O	K, we're DE
300	01B0 CDCE01	call step\$out ; else	step towards Trk 0
301	01B3 CDEl01	call read\$id ; and	try again
302	01B6 CABE01	jz id\$ok ; if O	K, we're OK
303	01B9 CDD301	call restore ; else	, restore the drive
304	01 BC 0600	mvi b,0; and make li	ke we are at track
305	id\$c	ok:	
306	01BE 78D305	mov a,b ! Out p\$fdtr	rack ; send current track to track port
307	01Cl 3A0000B8Cl	<u> </u>	op b ! rz ; If its desired track, we are done
308	01C7 D307	-	, desired track to data port
309	01C9 3E1A	mvi a,00011010b	; seek wi 10 ms. steps
310	01CB C3D501	jmp exec\$command	
311			
312			
313			
314	steps		
315	01CE 3E6A	mvi a,01101010b; step	out once at 10 ms.
316	0100 C3DS01	jmp exec\$command	
317			
318	resto		
319	01D3 3E0B	mvi a,00001011b	; restore at 15 ms
320	;	jmp exec\$command	
321			
322		P a a marga a d	issue 1707 command and weit for IDEO
323 324	exec	\$command:	; issue 1797 command, and wait for IREQ ; return Status
324	0105 0304	out p\$fdcmnd	; send 1797 command
326		\$IREQ:	; spin til IREQ
320 327		in p\$fdint ! ani 40h	
328	0107 DD002040C7	in p\$fdstat	; get 1797 Status and clear IREQ
329	0IE0 C9	ret	, get 1777 Status and clear INLY
330		100	
331	read	\$id:	
332	0IEl 21AB02		; set up DMA controller
			,

333	01E4 0)100F		lxi b,le	ngth\$id	l\$dmab	o*256 + j	p\$zdma ; for READ ADDRESS operation
334				outir				e _P or which
335	01E7+	EDB3		DB	0EDH	I,0 <mark>B</mark> 3H	[
336	01E9	3EC4		mvi a,l	1000100)b		; issue 1797 read address command
337	01EB (CDD50)1	call ex	ec\$com	ımand		; wait for IREQ and read status
338	0IEE	E69D		ani 100	011101	b		; mask status
339	01F0 2	2111004	46	lxi h;id	\$buffer	! mov	b,m	; get actual track number in
340	01F4 (С9		ret			,	; and return with z flag true for OK
341								,
342								
343			u\$con	in\$echo		· get d	console i	nput, echo it, and shift to upper case
344	01E5 (D0000)87CA					; see if any char already struck
345			0C3FS			-		io ; yes, eat it and try again
346	0110	CDOOL	u\$cl:		51111 : J1	inp uvo		io, yes, eat it and try again
347	0202	C D 000		call 2c	onin I n	oush psy	37	
348		4FCD0			a ! call	-	**	
349		FIFE		,	w ! cpi			
350	020A		500	sui 'a'-'	1	a ! IC		; make upper case
351		C9			A			, make upper case
352	0210	09		ret				
353	0011		1.10		1.	1		
354	0211			mmand		1		nt wd1797 command
355	0212		select\$1		ds	1		nt drive select code
356	0213		old\$sel		ds	1		Irive selected
357	0214		old\$tra	ck	ds	1	; last t	rack seeked to
358					_	_		
359	0215		diik\$sta	itus	ds	1	; last e	rror status code for messages
360								
361	0216	1020	select\$	table	db	0001\$	50000b,0	010\$0000b; for now use drives C and
								D
362								
363								
364			; e	error me	ssage c	ompon	ents	
365								
366	0218	2C20	s26s6lre	ad\$msg	db	', Rea	.d',0	
367	021F	2C20	577269v	vrite\$m	sg db	', Wri	te',0	
368								
369	0227	1802	opera	ation\$na	ıme	dw	read\$r	nsg
370								
371			; t	able of p	pointers	s to erro	or messa	ge strings
372			•	first en	try is fo	or bit 7	of 1797	status byte
373					-			-
374	0229	3902	error	\$table	dw	b7\$m	sg	
375	022B	4502			dw	b6\$m	-	
376	0220	4F02			dw	b5\$m	0	
						-	5	

```
377
      022F
             5702
                                 dw
                                        b4$msg
      0231
378
             6A02
                                 dw
                                        b3$msg
379
      0233
             7002
                                 dw
                                        b2$msq
380
      0235
             7C02
                                 dw
                                        bl$msg
      0237
                                        b0$msg
381
             8302
                                 dw
382
383
      0239
             204E6F7420b7$msg
                                        'Not ready,',0
                                 db
                                        ' protect,',0
384
      0245
             2050726F74b6$msq
                                 db
      024F
                                        'Fault,',0
385
             204661756Cb5$msg
                                 db
      0257
                                        'Record not found,',0
386
             205265636Fb4$msg
                                 db
387
      026A 204352432Cb3$msg
                                 db
                                        ' CRC,',0
             204C6F7374b2$msg db
388
      0270
                                        'Lost dsta,',0
      027C 2044524551b1$msg
                                        'DREO,',0
389
                                 db
390
      0283
             2042757379b0$msg
                                        ' Busy,',0
                                 db
391
392
                                               'Retry (Y/N)?',0
      028A 2052657472error$msg
                                        db
393
394
395
396
                        ; command string for Z80DMA device for normal operation
397
398
      029A C3
                    dma$block
                                 db
                                        0C3h ; reset DMA channel
399
      0298 14
                                               ; channel A is incrementing memory
                                 db
                                        14h
400
      029C 28
                                 db
                                        28h
                                               ; channel B is fixed port address
401
      029D 8A
                                 db
                                        8Ah
                                               ; RDY is high, CE/ only, stop on E0B
402
      029E 79
                                 db
                                        79h
                                               ; program all of ch. A, xfer B \rightarrow A (temp)
403
      029F
                   zdma$dma
                                        2
                                               ; starting DMA address
                                 ds
404
      02A1 7F00
                                        128-1 ; 128 byte sectors in SD
                                 dw
                                               ; xfer byte at a time, ch B is 8 bit address
405
      02A3 85
                                 db
                                        85h
406
      02A4 07
                                 db
                                        p$fddata ; ch B port address (1797 data port)
407
      02A5 CF
                                 db
                                        0CFh ; load B as source register
                                               ; ;'fer A \rightarrow B
408
      02A6 05
                                 db
                                        05h
                                        0CFh ; load A as source register
409
      02A7 CF
                                 db
410
      02A8
                   zdma$direction ds
                                               ; either A->B or B->A
                                        1
411
      02A9 CF
                                 db
                                        0CFh ; load final source register
412
      02AA 87
                                 db
                                        87h
                                               ; enable DMA channel
413
      0011 =
                    dmab$length
                                        $-dma$block
                                 equ
414
415
416
417
      02AB C3
                    read$id$blockdb
                                        0C3h ; reset DMA channel
      02AC 14
418
                                 db
                                        14h
                                               ; channel A is incrementing memory
419
      02AD 28
                                        28h
                                               ; channel B is fixed port address
                                 db
420
      02AE 8A
                                 db
                                        8Ah
                                               ; RDY is high, CE/ only, stop on EOB
      02AF 7D
                                               ; program all of ch. A, xfer A->B (temp)
421
                                 db
                                        7Dh
422
      02B0 1100
                                        id$buffer; starting DMA address
                                 dw
```

423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431	0282 02B4 02B5 02B6 02B7 02B8 0259 000F	0500 85 07 CF 01 CF 87 =	length	\$id\$dm	dw db db db db db db ab	6-1 85h p\$fdda 0CFh 0lh 0CFh 87h equ	; byte tta ; ch ; load ; xfer ; load ; enab	I ID always xfers 6 bytes xfer, ch B is 8 bit address B port address (1797 data port) dest (currently source) register B->A source register le DMA channel I\$id\$block
432 433				cseg	; easie	r to put		ID buffer in common
433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441	0011		id\$buf	fer ; track ; Side ; Secto ; lengt ; CRC ; CRC	or h 1	6	; buffe	er to hold ID field
442	0017			end				
BOMS	SG		0283	381	390#			
BIMS	G		027C	380	389#			
B2MS	SG		0270	379	388#			
B3MS	SG		026A	378	3871			
B4MS	SG		0257	377	386#			
B5MS	SG		024F	376	3851			
B6MS	SG		0245	375	384#			
B7MS			0239	374	383#			
BC			0000					
BELL	,		0007	52#				
CANO	CEL		01A6	289#				
	CKSEEF	ζ	01A9	226	257	296#		
CR		-	000D	50#				
DE			0002					
	COMM/	AMD	0211	203	249	354#		
	STATU		0215	251	275	359#		
	BLENG		0011	239	4131			
	BLOCK		029A	238	398#	413		
DPBS			0000	62	66	79	83	93#
ERRN			0186	277#	281			
	ORMSG		028A		392#			
	ORTAB		0229	276	374#			
	COMM		01D5	250	310	316	323#	337
FDIN		_	00BE	60	143#			
FDIN			00CD	77	152#			
	ITNEX	Т	00C1	145#	150			

FDLOGIN	00DB		76	1621
FDREAD	00DC	58	75	188#
FDSD0	000A		621	
FDSD1	005C	14	791	
FDWRITE	00E6	57	74	193#
HARDERROR	01A3	263	286#	
HL	0004			
IDBUFFER	0011	339	422	4341
IDOK	01 B E	299	302	3051
INITTABLE	00CE	144	1551	
IX	0004			
IY	0004			
LEMGTMIDDMAB	000F	333	430#	
LF	000A	511		
MORERETRIES	010D	2101	285	
NEWTRACK	012D		221	225#
OLDSELECT	0213		356#	
OLDTRACK	0213	219	3571	
OPERATIOMMAME			271	3691
PBANkSELECT	0025	202	247	5071
PBAUDCON1	0023 000C	243	247	
PBAUDCON2	0030			
PBAUDCON2 PBAUDCON34	0030			
PBAUDLPT1	000E			
PBAUDLPT2	0032			
PBOOT	0014			
PCENTDATA	0011			
PCENTSTAT	0010			
PCON2DATA	002C			
PCON2STAT	002D			
PCON3DATA	002E			
PCON3STAT	002F			
PCON4DATA	002A			
PCON4STAT	002 B			
PCONFIGURATION	0024			
PCRTDATA	001C			
PCRTSTAT	001D			
PFDCMND	0004	325		
PFDDATA	0007	308	406	425
PFDINT	0008	327		
PFDMISC	0009	223		
PFDSECTOR	0006	236		
PFDSTAT	0004	329		
PFDTRACK	0005	235	306	
PINDEX	000?			
PLPT2DATA	0028			
	5020			

PLPT2STAT	0029					
PLPTDATA	001E					
PLPTSTAT	001F					
PRTC	0033					
PSELECT	0008	209				
PWD1797	0004					
PZCTC1	000C					
PZCTC2	0030					
PZDART	001C					
PZDMA	0000	239	333			
PZPIO1	0008					
PzPIOlA	000A	155				
PZPIO1B	000B	157				
PZPIO2	0010					
PzPIO2A	0012					
PZPIO2B	0013					
PZPIO3	0024					
PZPI03A	0026					
PzPIO3B	0027					
PZSIO1	0028					
PZSIO2	002C					
READID	01E1	298	301	331#		
READIDBLOCK	02AB	332	417#	430		
READMSG	0218	189	366#	369		
RESTORE	01D3	303	318#			
RETRYOPERATION	1010F	212#	259			
RWCOMMON	C0ED	191	198#			
SAMETRACK	0139	223	234#			
SELECTMASK	0212	208	215	355#		
SELECTTABLE	0216	207	361#			
SPINLOOP	0133	229#	232			
STEPOUT	01CE	300	314#			
TRANS	00A4	62	63	79	80	106#
UCI	0202	344	346#			
UCONINECHO	01F5	284	343#	345		
WAITIREQ	0107	326*	327			
WRITEMSG	021F	194	367*			
ZDMADIRECTION	02A8	204	410#			
ZDMADMA	029F	205	403*			
?CONIN	0000	32	345	347		
?CONO	0000	32	348			
?CONST	0000	33	344			
PDEC 0000	30					
?PDERR	0000	31	269			
?PMSG	0000	29	271	280	283	
?WBOOT	0000	28	290			

@ADRV	0000	18			
@DBNK	0000	20	245		
@DMA	0000	19	205		
@ERMDE	0000	24	263		
@RDRV	0000	18	206		
@SECT	0000	19	236		
@TRK	0000	19	219	235	307

I.5 Bank and Move Module for CP/M 3 Linked BIOS

The MOVE.ASM module performs memory-to-memory moves and bankselects .

1 2							
3		cseg					
4 5		public ?move,?xmove,?bank					
6	extrn @cbnk						
7		\smile					
8		maclib z80					
9		maclib ports					
10 11	?xmov	ve: ; ALTOS can't perform	n interbank moves				
12	0000 C9	ret , ALTOS cant perion	in interbank moves				
12	0000 09						
14		?move:					
15	0001 EB	xchg	; we are passed source in DE and dest in HL				
16		ldir	; use Z80 block move instruction				
17	0002+EDB0	DB 0EDH,0B0H					
18	0004 EB	xchq	; need next addresses in same regs				
19 20	0005 C9	ret					
20			; by exiting through bank select				
22	?bank		, by extend through bank select				
23	0006 C5	push b ; save register b for te	emp				
24	0007 1717171	E618 ral ral ral ani lBh	; isolate bank in proper bit position				
25	000C 47	mov b,a	; save in reg B				
26	0000 DB25	in p\$bankselect	; get old memory control byte				
27) ani 0E7h (ora b	; mask out old and merge in new				
28	0012 0325	out p\$bankselect	; put new memory control byte				
29 20	0014 C1	pop b ; restore register b					
30 31	0015 C9	ret					
32			; 128 bytes at a time				
33			, 120 bytes at a time				
34	0016	end					
BC		0000					
DE		0002					
HL		0004					
IX		0004					
IY		0004	28				
	NKSELECT JDCON1	0025 26 000C	28				
	JDCON1 JDCON2	0030					
1 10/10		0020					

PBAUDCON34	0031
PBAUDLPT1	000E
PBAUDLPT2	0032
PBOOT	0014
PCENTDATA	0011
PCENTSTAT	0010
PCON2DATA	002C
PCON2STAT	002D
PCON3DATA	002E
PCON3STAT	002F
PCON4DATA	002A
PCON4STAT	002B
PCONFIGURATION	
PORTDATA	001C
PCRTSTAT	001D
PFDCMND	0004
PFDDATA	0007
PFDINT	0007 000 B
PFDMISC	000 B 0009
PFDSECTOR	0009
PFDSECTOR	0000
	0004
PFDTRACK	
PINDEX	000F
PLPT2DATA	0028
PLPT2STAT	0029
PLPTDATA	001E
PLPTSTAT	001F
PRTC	0033
PSELECT	$000\mathbf{B}$
PWD1797	0004
PZCTC1	000C
PZCTC2	0030
PZDART	001C
PZDMA	0000
PZPIO1	0008
PZPIOIA	000A
PZPIO1B	000 B
PZPIO2	0010
PZPIO2A	0012
PZPIO2B	0013
PZPIO3	0024
PZPI03A	0026
PZPIO3B	0027
PZSIO1	0027 002B
PZSIO2	002B
PANK	0020
	0000 5

22#

?MOVE	0001	5	14#
?XMOVE	0000	5	11#
@CBNK	0000	6	

1.6 I/o Port Addresses for Z80 Chip-based System: PORTS.LIB

This listing is the PORTS.LIB file on your distribution diskette. It contains the port addresses for the Z80 chip-based system with a Western Digital 1797 Floppy Disk Controller.

I/O Port addresses for Z80 chip set based system with wd1797 FDC

	; chip	bases	
p\$zdma p\$wd1797 p\$zpio1 p\$zctcl P\$zpio2 p\$boot p\$zdart p\$zpio3 p\$zsio1 p\$zsio2 p\$zctc2	equ equ equ equ equ equ equ equ equ equ	0 4 8 12 16 20 28 36 40 44 48	; OUT disables boot EPROM ; console 1 and printer 1
1 .	1		

; diskette controller chip ports

p\$fdcmnd p\$fdstat p\$fdtrack p\$fdsector p\$fddata	equ equ equ equ equ	p\$wdl797+0 p\$wdl797+0 p\$wd1797+1 p\$wd1797+2 p\$wd1797+3
	; parall	el I/O 1
p\$select p\$fdint p\$fdmisc p\$zpiola p\$zpiolb	equ p\$zpiol+0 equ p\$zpiol+0 equ p\$zpiol+1 equ p\$zpiol+2 equ p\$zpiol+3	
	; count	er timer chip 1
p\$baudconl p\$baudlptl		zctcl+0 zctcl+2

I.5 Bank & Move Module for Linked BIOS

p\$index	equ p\$zctcl+3
	; parallel I/O 2, Centronics printer interface
p\$cent\$stat	equ p\$zpio2+0
p\$cent\$data	equ p\$zpio2+1
p\$zpio2a	equ p\$zpio2+2
p\$zpio2b	equ p\$zpio2+3
	; dual asynch rcvr/xstr, console and serial printer ports
p\$crt\$data	equ p\$zdart+0
p\$crt\$stat	equ p\$zdart+1
p\$lpt\$data	equ p\$zdart+2
p\$lpt\$stat	equ p\$zdart+3
	; Third Parallel I/0 device
p\$configuration	on equ p\$zpio3+0
p\$bankselect	equ p\$zplo3+1
p\$zpio3a	equ p\$zpio3+2
p\$zpio3b	equ p\$zpio3+3
	; Serial I/0 device l, printer 2 and console 4
p\$lpt2data	equ p\$zsio1+0
p\$lpt2stat	equ p\$zsiol+1
p\$con4data	equ p\$zsiol+2
p\$con4stat	equ p\$zsio1+3
	; Serial I/0 device 2, console 2 and 3
p\$con2data	equ p\$zsio2+0
p\$con2stat	equ p\$zsio2+1
p\$con3data	equ p\$zsio2+2
p\$con3stat	equ p\$zsio2+3
	; second Counter Timer Circuit
p\$baudcon2	equ p\$zctc2+0
p\$baudcon34	
p\$baudlpt2	equ p\$zctc2+2
p\$rtc	equ p\$zctc2+3
r	- 1 r · · · · · ·

PCRTSTAT	001 D	
PFDCMND	0004	
pFDDATA	0007	
PFDINT	0008	
PFDMISC	0009	
PFDSECTOR	0006	
PFDSTAT	0004	
PFDTRACK	0005	
PINDEX	000F	
PLPT2DATA	0028	
PLPT2STAT	0029	
PLPTDATA	001E	
PLPTSTAT	001F	
PRTC	0033	
PSELECT	0008	
PWD1797	0004	
PZCTC1	000C	
PZCTC2	0030	
PZDART	001C	
PZDMA	0000	
PZPIO1	0008	
PZPIO1A	000A	
PZPIO1B	$000\mathbf{B}$	
PZPIO2	0010	
PZPIO2A	0012	
PZPIO2B	0013	
PZPI03	0024	
PZPI03A	0026	
PZPIO3B	0027	
PZSIO1	002B	
PZSIO2	002C	
?BANK		2#
?MOVE		4#
?XMOVE		1#
@CBNK	0000 6	

I.5 Bank & Move Module for Linked BIOS

1.7 Sauple Submit File for ASC 8000-15 System

Digital Research used this SUBMIT file to build the sample BIOS.

;Submit file to build sample BIOS for ACS 8000-15 single-density system

rmac bioskrnl rmac buot rmac move rmac chario rmac drvtbl rmac fdl797sd rmac scb link bnkbios3[b,q]=bioskrnl,boot,move,chario,drvtbl,fd17975d,scb gencpm

Listing 1-7. Sample Submit File for ASC 8000-15 System

End of Appendix I

Appendix Public Entry Points for CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules

Module Name	Public Entry Point	Function	Input Parameter	Return Value
BIOSERNL	?PMSG ?PDECPrint I ?PDERR	Print Message Decimal HL=n Print BIOS Disk Err Msg Header	HL points to msg umber none none	none
CHARIO	?CINIT ?CIST	Char Dev Init Dev Parms in @CTB Char Inp Dev St	C=Phys Dev # L B=Phys 0ev #	none A=00 if no input A=0FFH if input
	?COSTChar (Out 0ev St B=Phy	ys Dev # A=00	char available if output busy A=0FFH if output
	?CI	Char Dev Input	B=Phys Dev #	ready A=next available input char
MOVE	?CO	Char Dev Output	B=Phys Dev # C=Input Char	mput onur
MOVE	?MOVE	Memory to Memory Move	BC=byte count DE=start source adr HL=start dest adr	DE,HL point to next bytes after move
	?xMOVE	Set Banks for Extended Move	B=Dest Bank C=Source Bank	BC,DE,HL are unchanged
	?BANK	Select Bank	A=Bank Number	All unchanged
BOOT	?INIT ?LDCCP	System Init Load CCP	none none	none
	?RLCCP ?TIME	Reload CCP Get/Set Time	none none C=000H if get C=0FFH if set	none

Listing J-l. Public Entry Points for cP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules

End of Appendix J

Appendix K Public Data Items in CP/M 3 Sample BIOS Modules

Table K-1. Public Data Items

Module	Public	
Name	Data	Description
BIOSKRNL		
	@ADRV	Absolute Logical Drive Code
	@RDRV	Relative logical drive code (UNIT)
	@ TRK	Track Number
	@SECT	Sector Address
	@DMA	DMA Address
	@DBNK	Bank for Disk I/O
	@CNT	Multi-sector Count
	@CBNK	Current CPU Bank
CHARIO		
CITAKIO	@CTBL	Character Device Table

DRVTBL

@DTBL

Drive Table

End of Appendix K

Appendix L

CP/M 3 BIOS Function Summary

Table L-1. BIOS Function Jump Table Summary

No.	Function	Input	Output
0	BOOT	None	None
1	WBOOT	None	None
2	CONST	None	A=0FFH if ready
			A=00H if not ready
3	CONIN	None	A=Con Char
4	CONOUT	C=Con Char	None
5	LIST	C=Char	None
6	AUXOUT	C=Char	None
7	AUXIN	None	A=Char
8	HOME	None	None
9	SELDSK	C=Drive 0-15	HL=DPH addr
		E=Init Sel Flag	HL=000H if invalid dr.
10	SETTRK	BC=Track No	None
11	SETSEC	BC=Sector No	None
12	SETDMA	BC=.DMA	None
13	READ	None	A=00H if no Err
			A=01H if Non-recov Err
			A=0FFH if media changed
14	WRITE	C=Deblk Codes	A=00H if no Err
			A=01H if Phys Err
			A=02H if Dsk is R/O
			A=0FFH if media changed
15	LISTST	None	A=00H if not ready
			A=0FFH if ready
16	SECTRN	BC=Log Sect No	HL=Phys Sect No
		DE=Trans Tbl Adr	
17	CONOST	None	A=00H if not ready
			A=0FFH if ready
18	AUXIST	None	A=00H if not ready
			A=0FFH if ready
19	AUXOST	None	A=00H if not ready
			A=0FFH if ready
20	DEVTBL	None	HL=Chrtbl addr
21	DEVINI	C=Dev No 0-15	None
22	DRVTBL	None	HL=Drv Tbl addr
			HL=0FFFFH
			HL=0FFFEH

23 24	MULTIO FLUSH	C=Mult Sec Cnt None	None A=000H if no err A=00IH if phys err A=002H if disk R/O	
25	MOVE	HL=Dest Adr	HL & DE point to next	
		DE=Source Adr BC=Count	bytes following MOVE	
26	TIME	C=Get/Set Flag	None	
27	SELMEM	A=Mem Bank	None	
28	SETBNK	A=Mem Bank	None	
29	XMOVE	B=Dest Bank	None	
		C=Source Bank		
30	USERF	Reserved for System Implementor		
31	RESERV1	Reserved for Future Use		
32	RESERV2	Reserved for Future	Use	

End of Appendix L

\$, 115 \$B, 100, 104 ?, 27, 88 restriction on use, 73 ?AUXI, 77 ?AUXIS, 77 ?AUXO, 77 ?AUXOS, 77 ?BANK, 75 **?BNKSL**, 77 ?BOOT, 77 ?CI, 75, 78, 80 ?CINIT, 73, 75, 80 ?CIST, 75, 78, 80 ?CO, 75, 78, 80 **?CONIN, 77** ?CONO, 77 ?CONOST, 77 ?CONST, 77 ?COST, 75, 78, 80 77 ?DEVIN, ?DRTBL, 77 ?DVTBL, 77 ?FLUSH, 77 77 ?HOME, 74, 75, 78 ?INIT, ?LDCCP, 74, 75, 78 77 ?LIST, ?LISTS, 77 **?MLTIO, 77** ?MOV, 77 ?MOVE, 75, 85 ?PDEC, 75, 76 ?PDERR, 75, 76, 85 ?PMSG, 75, 76 ?READ, 77 ?RLCCP. 75,78 ?SCTRN. 77 77 ?SLDSK, ?STBNK, 77 ?STDMA, 77 77 ?STSEC, ?STTRK, 77 ?TIM, 77 ?TIME, 75 **?WBOOT**, 77 ?WRITE, 77 ?XMOV, 77.85 **?XMOVE**, 75 @,27 restriction on use, 73

@ADRV, 75, 76 @AIVEC, 28, 29 @AOVEC, 28, 29 @BFLGS, 28, 30, 31 @BNKBF, 18, 28, 29 @CBNK, 75, 76 @CIVEC, 28, 29 @CNT, 75, 76, 85 @COVEC, 28, 29 @CRDMA, 28, 29 @CRDSK, 28, 29 @CTBL, 74, 75, 78 @DATE, 25, 28, 31 @DBNK, 75, 76 @DMA, 75, 76 @DTBL, 74, 75 @ERMDE, 28. 30 @ERDSK, 2B, 29 @ERJMP, 2B, 31, 32 @FX, 28, 29 @HOUR, 25, 28, 31 @LOVEC, 28, 29 @MEDIA, 28, 30 @MIN, 25, 28, 31 @MLTIO, 28, 30, 52 @MKTPA, 18, 28, 32 @PDERR, 85 @RDRV, 75, 76 @RESEL, 28, 29 @SEC, 25, 2B, 31 @SECT, 75, 76 @TRK, 75, 76 @USRCD, 28, 29 @VINFO, 28, 29

A

allocation units, 41 allocation vector, 34, 88 See also ALV ALO and ALI, 43 ALV, 34, 38 banked system, 39 double, 91 double-bit, 38 single-bit, 38 assembler source file, 71 assembly language cross-reference program, 117 sources, 117 assembly-time arithmetic, 27

Index

assignment vector, 74 AUTO DISPLAY parameter, 88 AUTO parameter, 88 auto-density support, 109 automatic login feature, 41 AUXIN, 16, 17, 19, 50, 56 AUXIST, 16, 17, 50, 57 AUXOST, 16, 17, 50, 58 AUXOUT, 16, 17, 19, 50, 56

В

Backspace, 90 Bank 0, 5, 6 1, 5, 6 DMA buffer, 76 selection. 78 switching, 6 BANK field, 44, 46 bank number current, 24 bank-switched memory, 1, 6 block moves and memory selects, 24 organization, 8 requirements, 1,7 banked BIOS assembling, 69 linking, 69 preparing, 69 banked system allocation vector, 39 BANK field, 46 BCB data structures, 46 BDOS and BIOS, in common memory, 9 BDOS and BIOS, in Bank 0, 9 buffer control block, 44 common memory, 5, 34 with Bank 1 enabled, 6 Basic Disk Operating System See BDOS Basic Input Output System See BIOS, baud rate current, 32 serial devices, 79

BDOS, 1, 2, 15 calls to BIOS, 3, 21 disk I/O, 20 flags, 3 Function 44, 52 Function 49, 3 Function 50, 16 JMP, 18 Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) fields, 31 format, 25 BIOS, 1, 2, 15 assembling, 69 calls, 20 customizing, 4, 10 debugging, 100, 103 disk data structures, 34 error message header, 85 media flag, 107, 108 new functions, 113 routines, 2 organization, 15 subroutine entry points, 49, 84 subroutines, 17 BIOS entry points, 15, 49, 77 cold start, 101 flush buffers, 64 BIOS function calls: 0: 50, 51, 111, 161 1: 50, 52, 111, 161 2: 50, 55, 111, 161 3: 50, 55, 111, 161 4: 50, 55, 112, 161 5: 50, 56, 112, 161 6: 50, 56, 112, 161 7: 50, 56, 112, 161 9: 50, 59, 112, 161 10: 50, 59, 112, 161 11: 50, 60, 112, 161 12: 50, 60, 112, 161 13: 50, 61, 113, 161 14: 50, 61, 113, 161 15: 50, 57, 113, 161 16: 50, 62, 113, 161 17: 50, 57, 113, 161 18: 50, 57, 113, 161 19: 50, 58, 113, 161 20: 50, 52, 113, 161 21: 50, 53, 113, 161 22: 50, 53, 113, 161 23: 50, 63, 113, 161 24: 50, 64, 113, 161 25: 50, 65, 113, 161

26: 24, 50, 67, 113, 162

27: 50, 66, 114, 162 28: 50, 66, 114, 162 29: 50, 66, 114, 162 **BIOS** functions list, 50, Ill to 114 summary, 161, 162 BIOS jump vector, 15, 16, 49 public names, 77 BIOS modules, 71, 73 conventions, 73 external names, 73 external reference, 73 functional summary, 71 BIOSKRNL.ASM, 71 to 73 equate statement, 71 global variables, 76 modification restriction, 71 nonbanked system, 71 public utility subroutines, 76 BLM, 40, 42 block defined, 41 mask, 40, 42 moves, 15 shift factor, 40, 42 size restriction, 41 transfers (memory-to-memory), 24 blocking logical 128-byte records, 23 blocking/deblocking, 53 in BIOS, 52, 62, 64 BOOT, 50, 51 entry point, 100 JMP, 16 BOOT.ASM, 71 module, 72, 137 boot loader, 102 module, 137 BOOT module entry points, 77 boot ROMS, 51 BOOT routine, 18 booting CP/M 3, 102 BSH, 40, 42 Buffer Control Block, 34, 39 fields, 45 format, 44 buffer definitions, 94 buffer space, 8, 23 allocation, 15, 93 hardware-dependent, 5 buffering scheme, 8, 23

buffers, 46 Blocking/Deblocking, 92 dirty, 64 pending, 52

С

CCP, 2 flags, 3 loading into TPA, 78 CCP.COM, 13, 18 character device, 74 characteristics table, 140 initialization, 80, 140 input, 80 interfacing, 78 labels, 80 logical to physical redirection, 74 output, 80 table (@CTBL), 74 character I/O, 19 data structures, 32 interface routines, 74 machine-dependent, 79 Operation, 74 redirection, 78 CHARIO.ASM, 71 module, 140 CHARIO module, 72, 74, 78 checksumming full directory, 41 checksum vectors, 34, 38, 88 CHRTBL, 52, 78 clear area, 7 clock support, 15, 24, 67 clusters See block Cold Boot Loader, 10, 12, 51 process, 12, 13 passpoint, 105 cold start, 10, 101, 137 initialization, 12 loader, 15, 19, 101 common memory, 5, 11, 34, 68 banked system, 34 base page, 90 BIOS data structures, 67 CONIN, 16, 17, 50, 55 CONOST, 16, 17, 50, 57 CONOUT, 16, 17, 50, 55 **Console Command Processor** See CCP

console output, 12 call, 3 function, 3 CONST, 16, 50, 55 COPYSYS utility, 98, 102 CP/M 2 BIOS modification, 111 CP/M 3 Linked BIOS Bank/move Module, 152 customizing hardware, 11 loading into memory, 12 See also BIOS CPM3.SYS, 1 file, 11, 13, 19 file format, 115 loading into memory, 98 CPMLDR, 5, 19, 98, loo sign-on message, 101 utility, 100 CPMLDR -- BDOS, 12 CPMLDR BIOS, 12 CPMLDR.-COM, 99 CTRL-C, 39 CTRL-Z, 19, 54 Customizing CP/M 3, 11

D

data block allocation size, 40 buffers, 6, 23, 46, 93 record buffers, 24 record caching, 23 region, 10 data structures, 46, 144 in common memory, 67 DDT, 100 deblocking buffers, 8, 23 deblocking logical 128-byte records, 23 debugger, 103 debugging BIOS, 100, 103 with SID, 100, 103 default value with question mark, 89 density selection automatic, 62 density-sensing, 59 device name format, 78 DEVICE utility, 20, 74 DEVINI, 16, 17, 50, 53 DEVTBL, 16, 17, 50, 52

Direct Memory Access See DMA directory buffers, 23, 34, 46, 92 caches, 23 checksumming, 41 entries, 1, 41, 43 hashing, 39 hash tables, 5, 9, 92 records, 23 region, 10 search, 23 disk accesses, 18, 23 compatibility, 10 controller, 83 density automatically determined, 74 drives, 11, 107, 109 I/O, 15, 71, 72 organization, 10 disk formats multiple, 109 subsystem, 34, 62 Disk Parameter Block, 23, 34, 37, 109, 144 banked system, 34 DPB macro, 48 fields, 40 format, 40 Disk Parameter Header, 23, 34, 36, 59, 109, 144 DPH macro, 47 fields, 37 format, 36 regular, 83 disks distribution, 1 double density, 42 number supported, 1 physical sector size, 44 reformatting, 42 DMA, 144 address, 20 buffer, 23 controller, 9 dollar sign (\$), 115 DPH See Disk Parameter Header drive characteristics, 12 default, 90 table, 36, 74 drive code absolute, 76

DRVTBL, 17, 50, 53 JMP, 16 module, 72, 74, 81 DRVTBL.ASM, 71 dynamic allocation of space, 1 disk definition table, 59

Е

end-of-file, 20 condition, 19, 54 entry points **BIOS** subroutine, 84 **BOOT**, 51 BOOT module, 77, 78 flush buffers, 64 MOVE module, 86 WBOOT, 52 entry values, 27 equates absolute external, 27 for Mode Byte Bit Fields, 131 erased character, 90 error code, 24, 31 handling, 84 in multisector transfer, 63 nonrecoverable, 85 error messages extended, 1, 30 in foreign language, 32 long, 91 short, 30 Extended Disk Parameter Header (XDPH), 72, 74, 81 fields, 83 format, 82 Extent mask, 41

F

file CPM3.SYS format, 115 random access, I storage, 10 structure, 1 first-time initialization code, 83 flag, 27 global system, 30 media, 37 FLUSH, 16, 50, 64

G

G command, 105 GENCPM, 6, 11, 12 command input, 87 directory hashing, 39 in banked system, 87 in nonbanked system, 87 questions, 89, 90 utility, 23, 36, 46, 87 global variables, 76

Η

handshaking polled, 57, 58 hardware configurations, 2 initialization, 13, 77 requirements, 1 supported, 10, 11 special DMA, 65 hardware environment, 2, 10, 15 banked system, 11 nonbanked system, 11 hash table, 39 directory, 9, 92 searches, 107 head number. 37 hexadecimal address, 4 high-order bit, 43 byte, 27 nibble, 79 HOME, 16, 50, 58

I

I/O, 2

character, 19, 74, 78 devices, 11 disk, 20, 74 drivers, 71 multiple sector, 85 Port Addresses, 153 ports, 78 redirection, 20 simple device, 3 IBM 3740 disk, 10 INIT, 83, 84 initialization basic system, 51 cold start, 12 hardware, 51, 77 Page Zero, 18, 51 system tracks, 102 input, 140 input/output See I/O interbank moves, 86 intrabank moves, 86 IOBYTE facility, 52

J

JMP, 16, 18 jump address, 16 instructions, 15, 27, 49 table, 2 vector, 15, 16, 77

L

L option, 100 LDRBIOS, 12, 51, 100 length restriction, 100 linking, 100 LDRBIOS.ASM, assembling, 100 Least Recently Used (LRU) buffering, 8, 23 LINK field, 44 L option, 100 LINK-80, 69, 73 linker, 27 LIST, 16, 17, 50, 56 LISTST, 16, 17, 50, 57 location zero, 6 logical character device combinations, 54 device characteristics, 19 device reassigning, 20 drive, 144 read operation, 62 record blocking/deblocking, 23 records, 3 sequential sector address, 62 LOGIN, 83, 84 low-order bit, 43 byte, 4

LRU buffering scheme, 8, 23

Μ

macro definitions, 46, 133 media automatic type determination, 74 change, 107 flag, 37, 108 removable, 107 memory addresses, 12 configurations, 1 contiguous, 6, 11 image, 13 organization, 6 selects, 15 top of banked, 5, 6 memory-mapped video display, 19 memory organization banked, 5, 6, 8 general, 3, 4 nonbanked, 7-9 resident, 5 memory requirements, 7 banked system, 7 nonbanked, 7 segment table, 92 memory-to-memory move, 86 mode bits, 79 byte, 32 modules communication between, 2 interactions, 73 MOVE, 16, 17, 24, 50, 65 MOVE.ASM, 71, 73 MOVE Module, 85 entry points, 86 MOVES interbank, 86 intrabank, 86 MULTIO, 16, 17, 20, 23, 50, 63 multiple sector read or write operations, 20 multisector transfer, 63

Ν

names external, 73 public, 73 user-defined, 73 nonbank-switched memory, I block moves and memory selects, 24 requirements 1, 7 nonbanked BIOS assembling, 69 debugging, 103 linking, 69 nonbanked memory, 4 nonbanked system allocation vector, 39 buffer control block, 44 configuration, 9 number of lines per console page, 90

0

OFF field, 43 OPEN, 18 operating system bank, 9 operating system modules banked, 5 resident, 5 output, 140 overlay data buffer, 94 directory buffer, 93

Р

P command, 105 Page Zero, 4, 5, 18, 74 initialization, 18 passpoint, 105 cold BOOT routine, 105 in BIOS, 104 password protection, 1 peripheral single, 20 types, 12 peripheral device I/O, 2 reassigning, 20 physical devices, 20 disk unit, 144 I/O, 2 physical record buffers, 107 mask, 41, 44 shift factor, 41, 44

physical sector, 20 buffers, 23 count, 76 transfer, 23 translation, 62 PORTS.LIB, 153 Print Record, 115 printers, 11 public data items, 159 definitions, 129 entry points, 157 names, 77 symbols defined in modules, 75 public variables, 129 names, 17 predefined, 75

Q

question mark, 88 question variable, 88 questions GENCPM, 89 to 94

R

r/o, 27 r/w, 27 READ, 16 to 23, 50, 61, 83, 84 Read-Write routines, 23, 24 Register A, 17, 20 removable drives BIOS media flag, 107, 108 directory hashing, 107 performance penalty, 107 RESERV1, 16, 51 RESERV2, 16, 51 Resident System Extension (RSX) Modules, 8 residual multisector count, 63 retry routine, 84 returned values, 27 RMAC, 69, 73, 99, 117 root module, 81, 85 rotational latency, 63 RSX entry point, 8 Rubout, 90

Index

S

SCB, see System Control Block SCB.ASM, 71 file, 17, 27, 28 module, 72, 129 scratchpad area, 34, 38 sector address, 37 skew factors, 37 SECTRN, 16, 50, 62 SELDSK, 21, 23, 50, 59, 109 JMP, 16 routine, 74, 109 SELMEM, 16, 50, 66 separate buffer pools, 8, 23 sequential file input, 12 read, 23 serial devices, 74 baud rates, 79 SETBNK, 16, 23, 50, 66 SETDMA, 16, 20, 21, 23, 50, 60 SETSEC, 16, 21, 23, 50, 60 SETTRK, 16, 21, 23, 50, 59 SID, 100, 103, 105 G command, 104 I command, 104 L command, 104 sign-on message, 13, 101 single-density disk handler Z80 DMA, 144 floppy disk drive, 11 skew factor, 62 skew table address, 62 SKEW macro, 48 space allocation, 6 starting disk transfer address, 76 sector, 76 track, 76 status polling, 140 subroutines empty, 15 names, 17 symbols, public, 75

system bank, 6 components, 2 generation (GENCPM), 7, 39 initialization, 15, 18, 77 labels, 27 loader program (CPMLDR), 13 printer, 19 start-up, 3, 11 time and date, 15 System Control Block (SCB) definition, 17 disk organization, 10 error mode variable, 24 external labels, 27 fields, 3 system tracks, 10, 18, 19 initialization, 102 sample CP/M 3 organization, 99

Т

target system, 12 TIME, 16, 17, 50, 67 time of day function, 24 clocks, 78 top of memory, 5-6, 90 tracing routines, 105 track address, 37 Transient Program Area (TPA), 2, 32 transient programs, 5, 18 TYPE, 83

U

UNIT, 83 user interface, 2 USERF, 16, 51

V

variables global, 76 public, 17, 75, 129 vectors allocation, 38 checksum, 38 I/O redirection bit, 54 redirection, 29

W

Warm BOOT routine, 3 Warm start, 10, 137 WBOOT, 50, 52 entry point, 52 JMP, 16 routine, 18 WRITE, 16, 20, 21, 23, 50, 61, 83, 84

Х

XDPH, 72, 74, 81 fields, 83 format, 82 XMOVE, 16, 24, 50, 65, 66 XON/XOFF protocol, 32 XREF, 117

Ζ

Z80 LDIR instruction, 65